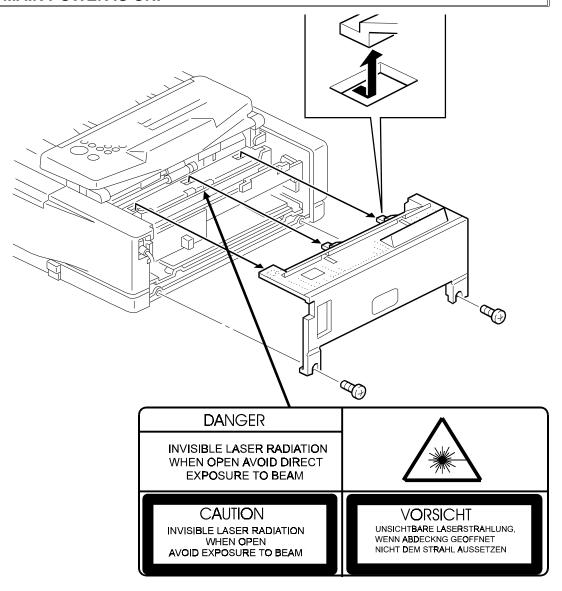
FX6 RICOH FAX SERVICE MANUAL

∴WARNING

THIS MACHINE CONTAINS A LASER BEAM GENERATOR. LASER BEAMS CAN CAUSE PERMANENT EYE DAMAGE. DO NOT OPEN THE LASERUNIT OR LOOK ALONG THE LASER BEAM PATH WHILE THE MAIN POWER IS ON.



Lithium Batteries (Memory Back-up)

∴CAUTION

The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION



1.1. SPECIFICATIONS

Type

Desktop type transceiver



Circuit

PSTN, PABX

Connection

Direct couple

Document Size

Length:

105 - 420 mm [4.1 - 16.5 ins]

Up to 1.2 m [47.2 ins], manually assisted Up to 14 m [46 ft] after adjustment

Width:

148 - 304 mm [5.8 - 12.0 ins]

Thickness:

0.05 to 0.2 mm [2 to 8 mils] (equivalent to 50 - 80 g/m²)

Document Feed

Automatic feed, face down

ADF Capacity

30 sheets (using 20 lb or 80 g/m² paper)

Scanning Method

Contact image sensor

Maximum Scan Width

216 mm [8.5 ins] \pm 0.25%

Scan Resolutions

Main scan: 8 dots/mm [203 dpi]

Sub scan:

Standard - 3.85 lines/mm [98 lpi] Detail - 7.7 lines/mm [196 lpi] Fine - 15.4 lines/mm [392 lpi]

Memory Capacity

ECM: 64 or 128 kbytes

(depends on the amount of image data) **SAF:** 244 kbytes (19 pages/Slerexe letter), extra 2 Mbyte (186 pages) or 4 Mbyte (350 pages) memory card available

Compression

MH, MR, EFC, MMR, SSC (MMR only with

ECM)

SAF storage for memory tx: MMR and raw

data

Protocol

Group 3 with ECM

Modulation

V.29 (QAM), V.27ter (PHM), V.21 (FM)

Data Rate (bps)

9600/7200/4800/2400, Automatic fallback

I/O Rate

With ECM: 0 ms/line

Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line

Transmission Time

9 s at 9600 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for a ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution

Printing System

Laser printing, plain paper, dry toner

Paper Size and Capacity

Standard Cassette: 250 sheets

USA: Letter

Europe: A4, A5 sideways Asia: A4, A5 sideways, F, F4

100 Sheet Cassette (Optional): 100 sheets

USA: Letter, Legal

Europe: A4, A5 sideways Asia: A4, A5 sideways, F, F4

Universal Cassette (Optional): 250 sheets

Letter, Legal, A4, A5 sideways, F, F4

Maximum Printing Width

208 mm [8.1 ins]

Print Resolutions Fax and Copy Mode:

Main scan: 16 dots per mm [406 dpi] Sub scan: 15.4 lines/mm [392 lpi] **Printer Mode:** 300 x 300 dpi

Power Supply

USA: $115 \pm 20 \text{ Vac}, 60 \pm 1 \text{ Hz}$ **Europe/Asia:** $187 - 276 \text{ Vac}, 50 \pm 3 \text{ Hz}$

Power Consumption (Base Machine Only)

Standby: Minimum 2 W; Normal 20 W

Transmit: 25 W Receive: 210 W Copying: 270 W

Operating Environment

Temperature: 17 - 28 °C [63 - 82 °F]

Humidity: 40 - 70 %Rh

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION SPECIFICATIONS

Dimensions (W x D x H)

475 x 459 x 240 mm [18.7 x 18.1 x 9.4 ins] Excluding handset, trays, and optional units

Weight

Approx. 17 kg [37 lbs]
Excluding CTM, handset, trays, and optional units

1.2. FEATURES

KEY: O = Used, X = Not Used,

A = With optional memory only,

B = With optional 100 sheet cassette only

C = With optional counter only

D = With optional handset only

E = PIF

Equipment	
ADF	0
Book scan	X
Built-in handset	X
Bypass feed: 1 sheet	0
Optional cassette: 100 sheets	В
Optional cassette: Universal	0
Cabinet	X
Counter	С
Cutter	X
Handset	D
Hard disk	X
Manual feed mechanism	Χ
Marker (Stamp)	0
Monitor speaker	0
Optional printer interface	Е

Video Processing Features	
Contrast	0
Halftone (Basic & Error Diffusion)	0
MTF	0
Reduction	Χ
Resolution	0
Smoothing to 16 x 15.4 l/mm	0

Communication Features - Auto	
Automatic fallback	0
Automatic redialing	0
Confidential reception	Α
Dual Access	0
Substitute reception	0

Communication Features - User Selectable	
Action as a transfer broadcaster	Χ
Al Redial (last ten numbers)	Χ
Answering machine interface	Χ
Authorized Reception	0
Auto-answer delay time	Χ

Communication Features - User Selectable	-
Auto dialing (pulse or DTMF)	0
Auto Document	0
Auto Document Auto image density selection	Х
Auto paper size selection	
Automatic Voice Message	X
Batch Transmission (max 6 files)	A
Broadcasting	0
Chain Dialing	0
Communication Result Display	X
Confidential ID Override	0
Confidential Transmission	0
Direct Fax Number Entry	0
Economy Transmission	X
Fax on demand	X
	^ A
Forwarding	0
Free Polling	0
Groups (7 groups)	X
Group Transfer Station Hold	X
	0
ID Transmission	0
Immediate Redialing	0
Immediate transmission	0
Keystroke Programs	0
Memory transmission	
Multi-step Transfer	X
Next Transfer Station	X
On Hook Diel	0
On Hook Dial	
Ordering Toner	X 0
Page Count	
Personal Codes with Conf. ID	0
Personal Codes with Conf. ID	A
Polling Reception	0
Polling Transmission	0
Polling tx file lifetime in the SAF	
Quick Dial (32 stations)	0
Reception modes (Fax, Tel, Auto)	0
Length Reduction	X
Remote control features	X
Remote Transfer	X
Restricted Access	0
Secured Polling	0
Secured Polling with Stored ID Override	0
Secure Transmission	Χ

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION FEATURES

Communication Features - User Selectable	
Send Later	0
Silent ringing detection	Χ
Specified Image Area	X
Speed Dial (90 stations)	0
Super Fine Resolution (16 x15.4 l/mm : 400 x 400 dpi)	X
Telephone Directory	X
Tonal Signal Transmission	0
Transfer Request	0
Transmission Deadline (TRD)	Α
Turnaround Polling	X
Two-step Transfer	X
Two in one	X
Voice Request (immed. tx only)	Х

Communication Features - Service Selectable	
Al Short Protocol	0
Auto-reduction override option	0
Busy tone detection	0
Closed Network (tx and rx)	0
Continuous Polling Reception	Χ
Dedicated tx parameters	0
ECM	0
EFC	0
Inch-mm conversion	Χ
Page retransmission times	0
Page separation mark	0
Protection against wrong conn.	0
Resol'n stepdown override option	Χ
Short Preamble	Χ
Well log	0

Other User Features	
Area code prefix	X
Automatic service call	Service
Center mark	0
Checkered mark	X
Clearing a memory file	0
Clearing a polling file	0
Clock	0
Confidential ID	Α
Copy editing (Erase	X
Center/Margin)	^
Copy mode	0

Other User Features	
Copy Mode Restriction	X
Counters	0
Daylight Saving Time	0
Destination Check	Χ
Direct entry of names	0
File Retention Time	X
File Retransmission	X O
Function Programs	0
ID Code	0
Label Insertion ("From xxx")	0
Language Selection	0
LCD contrast control	Service
Memory Lock	Α
Memory Lock ID	Α
Modifying a memory file	A X
Multi Sort Document Reception	Α
Multicopy mode	0
Own telephone number	0
Power Saver (Night Timer and	0
standby mode)	U
Print density control	0
Printing a memory file	0
RDS on/off	0
Reception Mode Switching Timer	O X X X O
Reception time printing	X
Reduction/Enlargement	X
Remaining memory indicator	0
Remote ID	X
Reverse Order Printing	Α
RTI, TTI, CSI	0
Secure ID	X
Service Report Transmission	0
Speaker volume control	0
Specified Cassette Selection	В
Substitute reception on/off	0
Telephone line type	0
Toner Saving Mode	0
TTI on/off	0
User Function Keys	Х
User Parameters	0
Wild Cards	0

Reports - Automatic	
Charge Control Report	X
Communication Failure Report	0
Confidential File Report	Α
Error Report	0
Memory Storage Report	0
Mode Change Report	Χ
Polling Clear Report	0
Polling Reserve Report	0
Polling Result Report	0
Power Failure Report	0
TCR (Journal)	0
Toner Cassette Order Form	Χ
Transfer Result Report	Χ
Transmission Result Report	0

Reports - User-initiated	
Authorized Reception List	0
Charge Control Report	Χ
File List	0
Forwarding List	Α
Group List	0
Personal Code List	0
Program List	0
Quick Dial List	0
Specified Cassette Selection List	В
Speed Dial List	0
TCR	0
Transmission Status Report	Χ
User Function List	Χ
User Parameter List	0

Service Mode Features	
Auto Paper Select test	Χ
Back-to-back test	0
Bit switch programming	0
Book mode test	Χ
Buzzer test	0
Cable equalizer	0
Comm. parameter display	0
Counter check	0
Country code	0
DTMF tone test	0
Echo countermeasure	0
Effective term of service calls	0
Error code display	0
Excessive jam alarm	0

Service Mode Features	
File Transfer	0
LCD contrast adjustment	0
Line error mark	0
Memory file printout (all files)	0
Modem test	0
NCU parameters	0
Operation panel test	0
Periodic service call	0
PM Call	0
Printer mechanism test	0
Printer test patterns	0
Programmable attenuation	Χ
Protocol dump list	0
RAM display/rewrite	0
RAM dump	0
RAM test	0
Ringer test	X
Scanner lamp test	0
Scanner mechanism test	0
Sensor initialization	X
Serial number	0
Service monitor report	0
Service station number	0
Software upload/download	0
SRAM data download	0
System parameter list	0
Technical data on the TCR	0
Thermal head parameters	X
Transmission Status Report	X
User data transfer	0

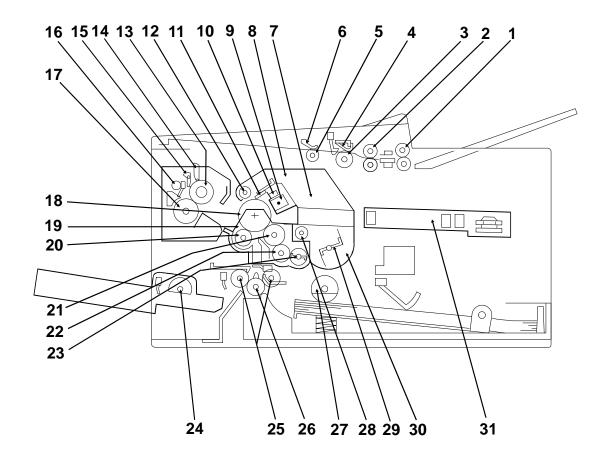
Memory Files

Max. number of files: 100

Max. number of stations/file: 132 Max. number of stations overall: 300

1.3. COMPONENT LAYOUT

1.3.1. Mechanical Components

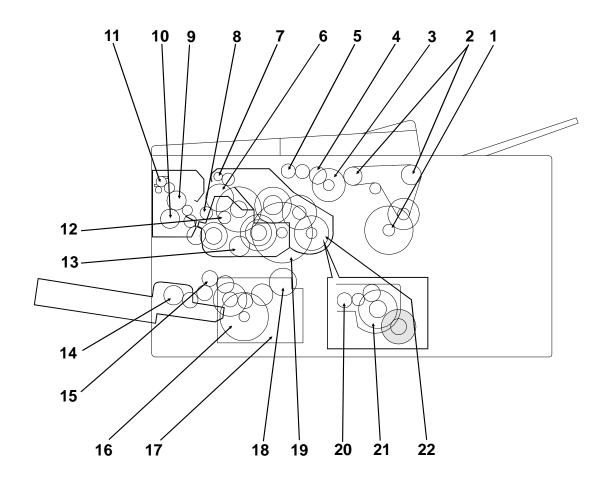


H516V501.wmf

No.	Name	Description
1	R2 Roller	Feeds the document through the scanner.
2	R1 Roller	Feeds the document through the scanner.
3	Document Feed Roller	Feeds the document into the scanner.
4	Separation Pad	Allows one page into the scanner.
5	Pick-up Roller	Picks up pages of the document from the document table one at a time.
6	Pressure Plate	This applies pressure against the pick-up roller.
7	CTM (Cleaning Toner Magazine)	This consists of the toner cartridge, cleaning unit, used toner tank, charge corona unit, and quenching lamp.
8	Used Toner Tank	This removes and stores excess toner from the master after image transfer. It is part of the CTM.

No.	Name	Description
9	Charge Corona Unit	This applies a charge to the drum at the start of the print cycle. It is part of the CTM.
10	Quenching Lamp	This removes excess charge from the master at the end of the print cycle. It is part of the CTM.
11	Cleaning Blade	This wipes toner off the OPC drum.
12	Used Toner Collection Roller	This catches the used toner and the transfers the toner to the used toner tank. It is part of the CTM.
13	Hot Roller	Heat from this roller fuses the toner to the copy paper.
14	Cleaning Pad	This cleans up and spreads silicone oil on the surface of the hot roller.
15	Hot Roller Strippers	These take the paper off the hot roller after fusing.
16	Paper Feed-out Rollers	These feed the paper out of the printer.
17	Fusing Pressure Roller	This applies pressure to the paper during the fusing process.
18	OPC Drum	The latent image is written to this Organic Photoconductor Drum.
19	Development Unit	This consists of the development roller, toner application roller, toner supply bar, and transfer roller.
20	Transfer Roller	This applies a charge to the paper to pull the toner off the drum and onto the copy paper.
21	Development Roller	This roller applies toner to the latent image on the drum.
22	Toner Application Roller	This roller transfers toner to the development roller.
23	Toner Supply Bar	This stirs up and transfers toner to the toner application roller.
24	Paper Feed Rollers (100 Sheet Cassette)	These pick up the top sheet of paper from the stack in the optional 100 sheet cassette and feed it into the printer.
25	Paper Feed Pressure Rollers	These feed paper from the cassette or bypass feed slot into the printer.
26	Registration Roller	This carries out the registration process.
27	Paper Feed Rollers	These pick up the top sheet of paper from the stack in the cassette and feed it into the printer.
28	Toner Supply Roller	This supplies toner to the development unit. It is part of the toner tank.
29	Toner Agitator	This stirs up toner in the toner tank, so that it does not collect into lumps.
30	Toner Tank	This supplies toner to the development unit. It is part of the CTM.
31	Laser Unit	This consists of the LDDR (Laser Diode Driver), Focusing lens, F θ Lenses, Hexagonal mirror motor, and other laser optic components.

1.3.2. Drive Components

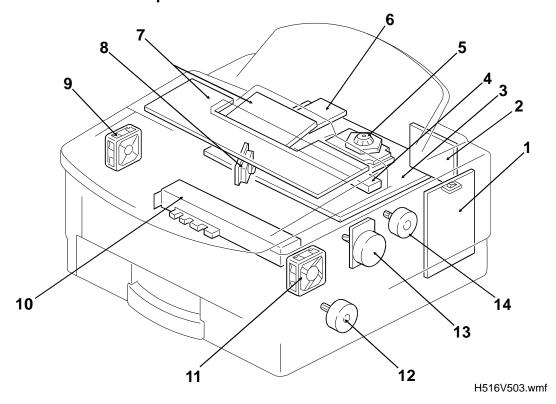


H516V502.wmf

No.	Name	Description
1	Tx Motor	This stepper motor drives the scanner.
2	R1/R2 Rollers	These feed the document through the scanner.
3	Document Feed Drive Gear	This drives the document feed and pick-up rollers.
4	Document Feed Roller Drive Gear	This drives the document feed roller.
5	Pick-up Roller Drive Gear	This drives the pick-up roller.
6	Drum Drive Gear	This drives the drum.
7	Used Toner Collection Roller Drive Gear	This drives the used toner collection roller (magnetic) in the used toner tank.
8	Transfer Roller Drive Gear	This drives the transfer roller.
9	Hot Roller Drive Gear	This drives the hot roller.
10	Fusing Pressure Roller Drive Gear	This drives the pressure roller in the fusing unit.

No.	Name	Description
11	Paper Feed-out Roller	This feeds printouts out of the machine.
12	Development Roller Drive Gear	This drives the development roller.
13	Toner Application Roller Drive Gear	This drives the toner application roller.
14	Paper Feed Roller Drive Gear (100 Sheet Cassette)	This drives the paper feed roller in the optional 100 sheet cassette.
15	Registration Roller Drive Gear	This drives the registration roller.
16	Paper Feed Motor	This stepper motor drives the paper feed mechanisms and the registration roller.
17	Paper Feed Roller Drive Gear Box	The gears in this box drive the paper feed roller in the main cassette.
18	Paper Feed Roller Drive Gear	This drives the paper feed roller.
19	Main Motor	This brushless dc motor drives the drum, fusing unit, development unit, and CTM.
20	Toner Supply Gear	This ensures the supply of toner from the toner tank in the CTM, and its distribution across the full length of the development unit.
21	Toner Agitator Drive Gear	This drives the toner agitator.
22	CTM Drive Gear	This drives the CTM.

1.3.3. Electrical Components

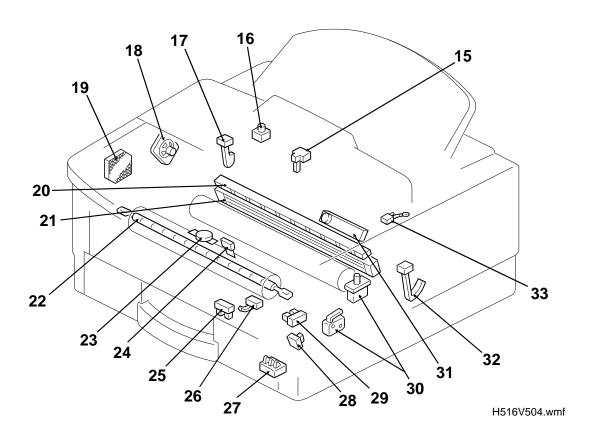


1. PCBs

No.	Name	Description
3	FDU (Facsimile Driver Unit)	This board contains drivers for the motors, a dc-dc converter, the energy saving mode cpu, and other drive electronics.
6	FCE (Facsimile Control Engine)	This board controls the machine. It contains the main cpu, flash ROM, system RAM, and so on.
2	NCU (Network Control Unit)	This board contains a relay and switches for interfacing the machine to the network and the handset.
7	OPU (Operation Panel Unit)	This board controls the operation panel.
1	PSU (Power Supply Unit)	This board supplies power to the machine, and switches the fusing lamp on/off.
8	LDDR (Laser Diode Driver)	This board drives the laser diode.
10	Power Pack	This supplies high voltages to the corona wire, transfer roller, and development rollers.
4	Contact Image Sensor Assembly	This sensor reads and converts the light reflected from the document into an analog video signal. It uses an RLA (Rod Lens Array) sensor unit. An LED array which illuminates the document is contained in this unit.

2. Motors

No.	Name	Description
14	Tx Motor	This stepper motor drives the scanner.
13	Main Motor	This brushless dc motor drives the drum, fusing unit, development unit, and CTM.
12	Paper Feed Motor	This stepper motor drives the registration roller and the paper feed mechanisms in the cassettes.
5	Hexagonal Mirror Motor	This high-speed dc motor drives the hexagonal mirror in the laser printer optics.
9	Ozone Fan Motor	This removes ozone-laden air from the vicinity of the drum, and filters out the ozone.
11	Cooling Fan Motor	This cools the interior of the machine.



3. Sensors

No.	Name	Description
17	Document Sensor	This detects the presence of a document in the feeder.
15	Scan Line Sensor	This detects when a page is approaching the auto shading position.
31	Toner End Sensor	This detects when the toner has run out.
27	Paper Size Detector	This detects the paper size installed in the cassette. The user must install the correct size indicator.
32	Paper End Sensor	This detects when the paper in the cassette has run out.
26	Registration Sensor	This detects when paper has reached the registration roller.
29	Fusing Exit Sensor	This detects when the paper has been fed out of the printer.
28	Fusing Exit Cover Switch	This detects whether the fusing exit cover is open or closed.
25	Bypass Feed Sensor	This detects when a sheet of paper has been inserted into the bypass feed slot. Then the registration roller feeds the paper a short distance into the machine to prepare for printing, and stops.

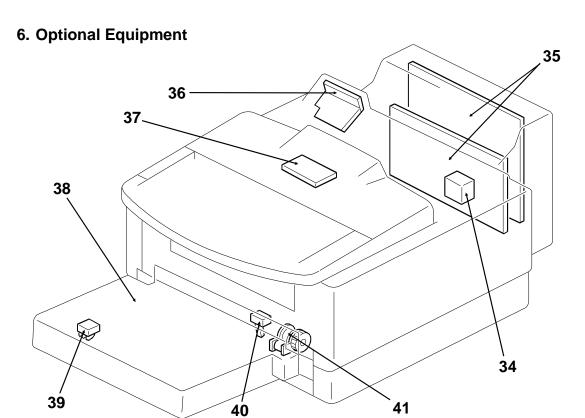
4. Interlock Switches

No.	Name	Description
30	Interlock Switches	If the fusing unit cover and/or top cover are open, these interlock switches interrupt the +5VLD power supply for the laser diode and the +24VD power supply for the power pack, motors, and other components.

5. Others

No.	Name	Description
16	Stamper Ass'y	This stamps a red circle on each page that is successfully fed through the scanner.
20	Quenching Lamp	This removes excess charge from the drum at the end of the print cycle. This is a part of CTM.
21	Charge Corona Unit	This applies a charge to the drum at the start of the print cycle. This is a part of CTM.
23	Thermostat	This interrupts the ac power supply to the fusing lamp if the temperature of the thermostat surface exceeds 400°C.
24	Thermistor	This monitors the temperature at the hot roller surface.
22	Fusing Lamp	The heat from this lamp fuses the toner to the paper.
18	Monitor Speaker	This allows the user to listen to the condition of the telephone line.
33	Zener Diode	This ensures that the charge given to the drum by the charge corona wire does not exceed -750 volts.
19	Ozone Filter	This removes ozone-laden air from the vicinity of the drum.

H516V505.wmf



No.	Name	Description
34	Counter	This counts the number of prints.
35	Printer Interface	This allows the machine to be connected to a computer as a laser printer.
36	RS232C Interface Board*	This allows the machine to be connected to a computer as an external fax device, for example.
37	IC Card	This increases the SAF memory capacity. Either a 2 MB or 4 MB card can be used.
38	100 Sheet Cassette	This increases the paper capacity of the machine, and allows the machine to have more than one paper size available at the same time.
39	Paper Size Detector (100 Sheet Cassette)	This detects the paper size installed in the cassette.
40	Paper End Sensor (100 Sheet Cassette)	This detects when the paper in the cassette has run out.
41	Paper Feed Clutch (100 Sheet Cassette)	This transfers drive from the paper feed motor to the paper feed roller in the cassette.

^{*} This option may not be available in some countries.

H516V506.wmf

1.4. OVERALL MACHINE CONTROL Optional RS232C I/F DRAM Working ECM/SAF System RAM Memory ŔOM RAM (SRAM) Video SRAM 100 Sheet **FDU** DATA/ADDRESS BUS FCE LDDR MDM Thermisto Control Signals Amplifier Hybrid IC External I/O (EXIO) (HIC) DC-DC PSU Driver Optional NCII Speaker components and Handset

The FCE (Facsimile Control Engine) contains the FCIP (Facsimile Control and Image Processor), DRAM, SRAM, System ROM, and video processing memory, and controls the entire system through the FDU (Facsimile Driver Unit).

There are two cpus in the machine: the main cpu (FCIP) on the FCE and the energy saver cpu on the FDU. In energy saver mode, the main CPU switches off and the energy saver CPU takes over.

The FCIP consists of the following component blocks:

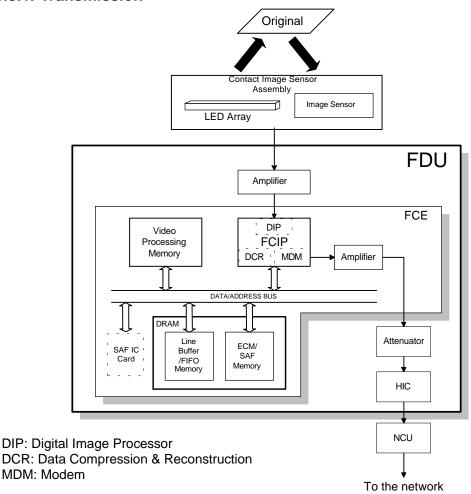
- RU8 CPU Main CPU
- MDM Modem
- LIF- Laser Interface
- DMAC DMA Controller
- PRIF Printer Interface
- DIP Digital Image Processor
- DCR Data Compression and Reconstruction

The 1 MB DRAM contains the SAF memory, ECM buffer memory, work area, and page memory. The SAF memory can be extended by 2 or 4 Mbytes with an IC card.

A 512 KB (4 Mbit) flash ROM is used for the system ROM. Software in this ROM can be rewritten from the IC card slot or by RDS.

1.5. VIDEO DATA PATH

1.5.1. Transmission



H516V507.wmf

Immediate Transmission:

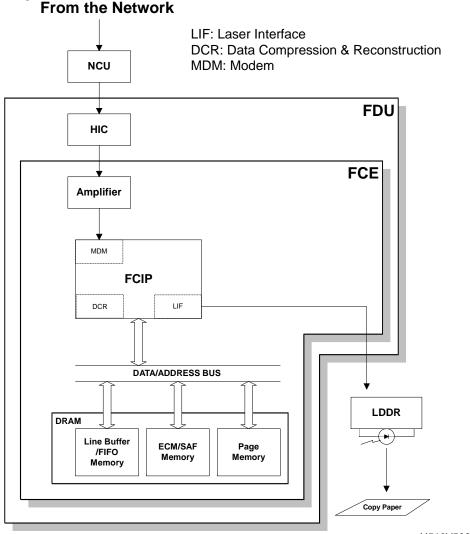
Scanned data form the contact image sensor passes to the DIP block in the FCIP. After analog/digital video processing, the DCR block compresses the data for transmission. The compressed data then passes either to the FIFO memory or to the ECM memory, before it is sent to the telephone line through the modem.

Memory Transmission:

First, the scanned data is stored in the SAF memory after compression in the DCR block.

At the time for transmission, the DCR block decompresses the data from the SAF memory, then compresses it again after handshaking with the other terminal is done. The compressed data then passes either to the FIFO memory or to the ECM memory, before it is sent to the telephone line through the modem.

1.5.2. Reception

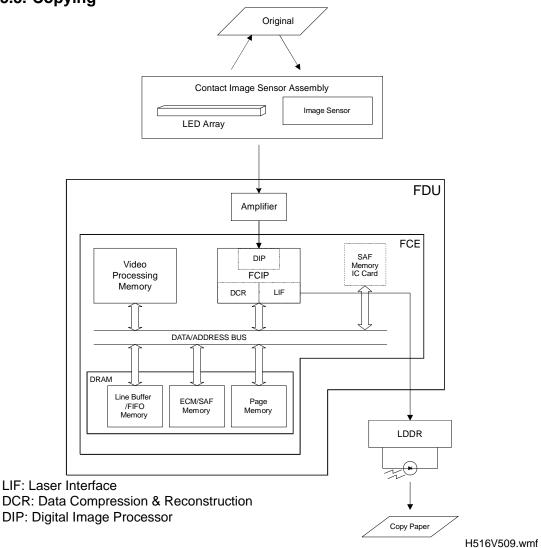


H516V508.wmf

Data from the line passes to the modem through the NCU and hybrid IC. After the modem demodulates the data, the decompressed data passes to the DCR block, through either the FIFO or the ECM memory, where the data is decompressed to raster image data. At the same time, the compressed data passes to the SAF memory as a backup in case of mechanical problems during printing (substitute reception).

The raster image data is then passed to the page memory for printing. After a page of data has been stored in the page memory, the data is sent to the LDDR through the LIF block.

1.5.3. Copying



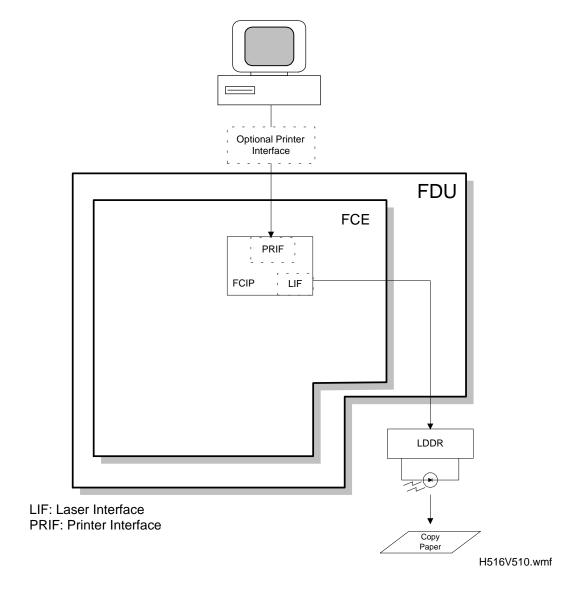
Single copy

The scanned data passes to the page memory after video processing in the DIP block. After a page of data has been stored in the page memory, the data is sent to the LDDR through the LIF block.

Multi-page copy

The scanned data passes to the SAF memory after video processing (DIP) and compression (DCR). After a page of data has been stored in the SAF memory, the data passes to the DCR block again for decompression, then it passes to the page memory for printing.

1.5.4. Printing from the Optional Printer Interface

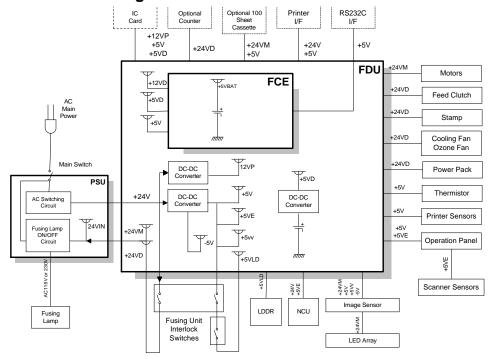


The page memory inside the printer interface is used to hold the print data.

After a page of data has been stored in the printer interface's page memory, the data is sent to the LIF through the PRIF (Printer Interface) block.

1.6. POWER DISTRIBUTION

1.6.1. Distribution Diagram

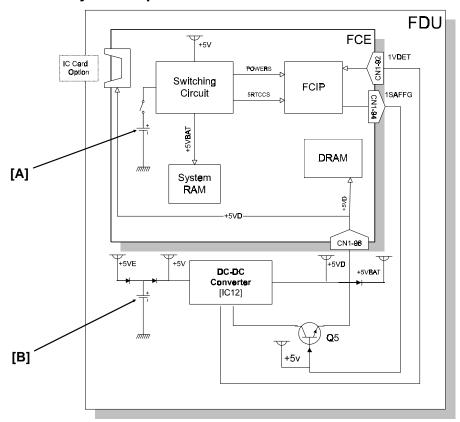


H516V511.wmf

The PSU supplies +24V dc power to the FDU. The FDU converts the +24V dc power supply to the following supplies.

+5V	This is normally on when the main switch is on.
+5VE	This is used for watching for an activation signal from the NCU, document feeder, or operation panel when the machine is in energy saving mode.
+5VLD	This supplies the laser diode. It is interrupted if the fusing unit cover interlock switch opens.
+5VV	This is a more stable power supply than +5V. It is used for the Contact Image Sensor.
+5VD	This supplies the DRAM and the optional IC card on the FCE to back up the stored data for one hour, if the power is switched off and some data is stored in them. A rechargeable battery on the FDU is used to generate +5VD.
+5VBAT	This supplies the system RAM on the FCE to back up the programmed data, if the power is switched off. A lithium battery is used to generate +5VBAT.
+24V	This is normally on when the main switch is on.
+24VD	This is interrupted if the fusing unit cover interlock switch opens.
+24VIN	This supplies +24V to the fusing unit on/off switching circuit. It is interrupted if the fusing unit cover interlock switch opens.
+24VM	This is interrupted if the machine enters energy saving mode.
-5V	This is used for the image sensor.
+12VP	This is supplied to the Flash ROMs on teh FCE and the optional IC card.

1.6.2. Memory Back-up Circuit



H516V512.wmf

The +5VBAT supply from the lithium battery [A] backs up the system RAM which contains system parameters and programmed telephone numbers, and the real time clock in the main cpu. The 5RTCCS signal tells the main cpu whether the back-up power (+5VBAT) is coming from the battery or from the +5V power supply.

A rechargeable lithium battery [B] and the dc/dc converter on the FDU back up the DRAM (SAF memory) for one hour, if there is data in the SAF memory and the power is switched off. While the main power is on, the +5VE supply recharges the battery. The battery recharges in one or two days.

The battery [B] generates about 3 volts (max. 3.2 volts). The dc/dc converter (IC12) lifts this voltage to 5 volts so it can be used as the +5VD supply for SAF backup. The CPU monitors the voltage of the +5VD supply with the 1VDET signal. When the battery has run down, and the voltage is lower than 4.4 volts, the CPU stops the dc/dc converter by dropping 1SAFFG to low and the machine stops backing up the memory.

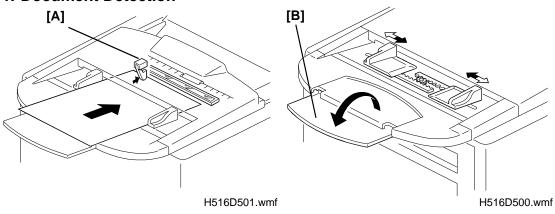
There is no battery switch for the battery [B].

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.1. SCANNER

2.1.1. Mechanisms

1. Document Detection



The document sensor [A] detects when a document is placed in the ADF. The fold-down extension [B] helps to support longer documents.

2. Pick-up and Separation

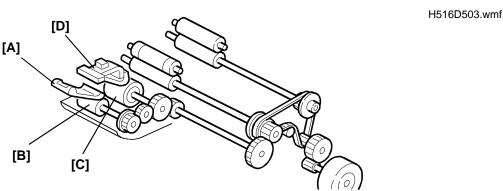
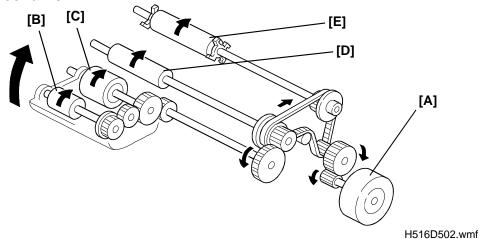


Plate [A] aligns the leading edges of the pages of the document. When the machine starts feeding the document, the mechanical clutch mechanism in the ADF roller unit lifts up the pick-up roller [B] to feed the bottom sheet of the document. Then, the feed roller [C] feeds the sheet into the scanner. The separation rubber plate [D] prevents the feed roller from feeding more than one sheet at a time.

Cross reference

ADF mechanical clutch mechanism: Group 3 Facsimile Manual, page 2-2-8

3. Drive Mechanism



The tx motor [A] drives the pick-up roller [B], feed roller [C], R1 roller [D], and R2 roller [E].

The scanning speed for each resolution mode is as follows.

Resolution	Scan speed (/A4)
Standard - Storage to SAF (Memory Tx or Multi-copy mode)	2.83 s
Standard - Immediate Tx or Single copy mode	5.65 s
Detail	5.65 s
Fine	11.30 s

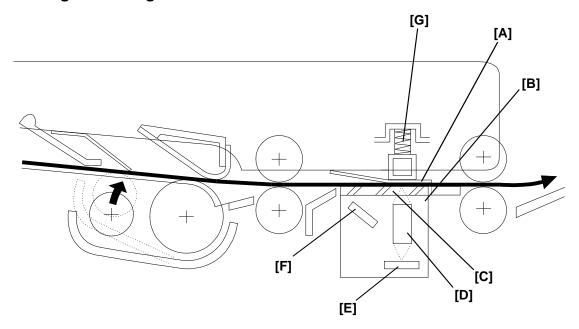
The scanner can feed paper up to 304 mm (12.0") wide, however the actual scan width is 216 mm (8.5").

The maximum acceptable document page length can be adjusted to 0.6 m (23.6"), 1.2 m (47.2"), or 14 m (46 ft). The default setting is 1.2 m.

Cross reference

Maximum document length: Scanner Switch 00, bits 2 and 3.

4. Image Scanning



H516D544.wmf

The scanner consists of a shading plate [A] and a contact image sensor (CIS) assembly [B]. Inside the CIS are an exposure glass [C], a rod lens array [D], an image sensor [E], and an LED array [F].

The image sensor consists of a row of 1728 photosensitive elements (Letter width x 8 dots/mm). Light from the LED array is reflected from the document and focused onto the image sensor by the rod lens array. Because of the short optical path inside the CIS, the focal depth is much shorter than for a CCD type scanner. Because of this, the spring [G] pushes the shading plate [A] so that the document surface always touches the exposure glass at the scan line.

The image sensor assembly is adjusted at the factory, so it does not need any adjustment at replacement in the field.

The image sensor scans the original one line at a time, and outputs an analog signal for each line. The voltage from each element depends on the intensity of the light reflected from the original onto the element; the intensity of the light depends on the darkness of the area of the document it was reflected from.

5. Sub Scan Resolution Conversion

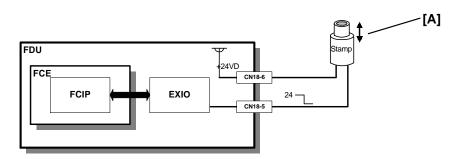
Standard: The machine feeds the document in 7.7 line/mm steps, and scans it in accordance with the setting of scanner bit switch 00, bit 4. A scanning resolution of 3.85 lines/mm means that the machine scans once every two motor steps.

	Scanner bit switch 00	
	Bit 4 = 0	Bit 4 = 1
Immediate tx/ Copying	Scan - 3.85 l/mm Tx/Copy - 3.85 l/mm	Scan - 7.7 l/mm Tx/Copy - 3.85 l/mm (OR processed)
Scanning to memory	Scan - 3.85 l/mm Tx/Copy - 3.85 l/mm	OR processing is always disabled.

Detail: The machine feeds and scans the document in 7.7 line/mm steps. The scanned lines are transmitted without any conversion.

Fine: The machine feeds and scans the document in 15.4 line/mm steps. The scanned lines are transmitted without any conversion. In memory transmission, if the other terminal cannot receive a message at Fine resolution, alternate lines (even-numbered lines) are deleted before transmission.

6. Stamping



H516D542.wmf

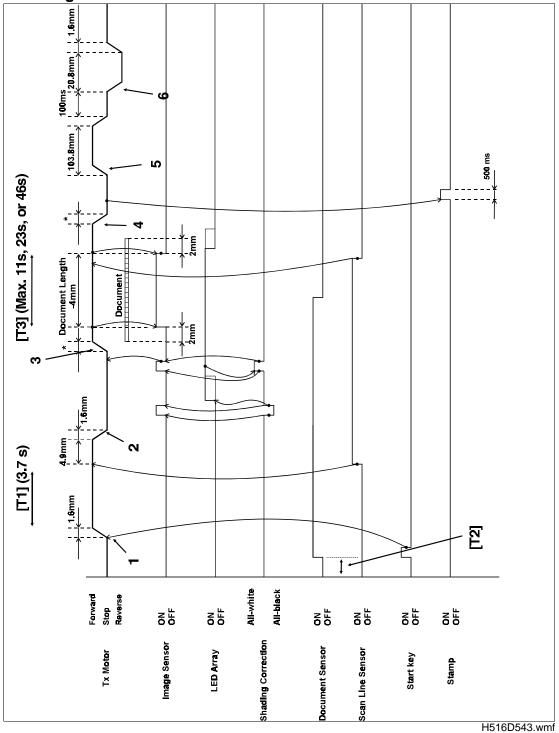
The original always stops at the stamping position after the page was transmitted (immediate transmission) or stored (memory transmission) successfully.

If the Stamp LED is turned on, the cpu drops the voltage at CN18-5 for 500 ms to activate the stamper solenoid [A]. Then the original is fed out of the scanner.

If the Stamp LED is turned off, the machine feeds out the original without stamping.

2.1.2. Scanner Timing Chart

1. Timing Chart



The following describes what is happening at points 1 to 6 on the timing chart.

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS SCANNER

- 1. When the Start key is pressed, the tx motor feeds the original to the scan line sensor.
- 2. The tx motor stops for auto shading to take place.
- 3. After auto shading, the tx motor feeds the original through the scanner.
- 4. The tx motor stops when the original is at the stamping position.
- 5. The tx motor feeds the original out of the scanner.
- 6. The tx motor reverses so that the pick-up roller unit returns to its home position.

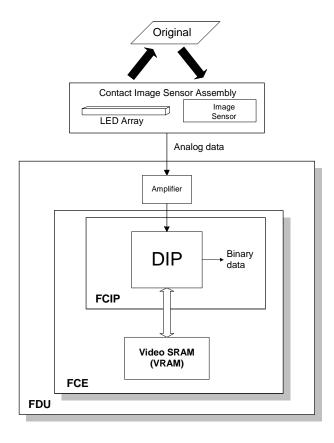
2. Jam Conditions

The main cpu detects a document jam if one of the following conditions occurs.

Jam Condition	Description	Error Code	
Non-feed	The scan line sensor does not switch on within 3.7 s [T1] of the tx motor starting.	1-00	
Incorrect sensor conditions	The scan line sensor switches on while the document sensor is off [T2].		
Maximum document length exceeded	The scan line sensor does not turn off after the maximum document length has been fed since it turned on [T3]. This is after 11 s at standard resolution for memory tx, 23 s at standard resolution for immediate tx or at detail resolution, or 46 s at fine resolution (all these times are for a 1.2 m long document).	1-01	
Error during feed-out	When the final page of the document has been fed out of the scanner, or when a jammed document has been removed, the tx motor reverses. This error occurs if a document is placed into the feeder while the motor is rotating.	No error code	
Cover open	The ADF cover and/or printer cover are open while the machine is working.	No error code	

2.1.3. Video Processing

1. Analog Signal Processing



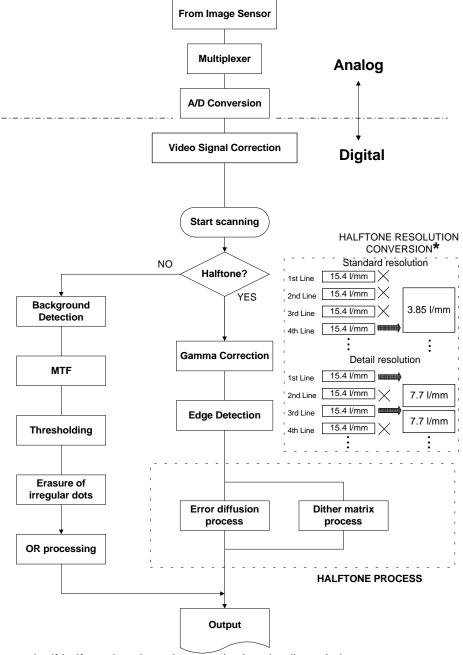
H516D545.wmf

The analog video signal from the contact image sensor assembly is amplified on the FDU, then transferred to the DIP (Digital Image Processor) inside the FCIP.

2. Digital Video Processing Steps

The analog signal from the contact image sensor is first converted into 8-bit digital data in the DIP. Then it passes through some digital processes that depend on the selected scanning modes.

The DIP uses a dedicated 8 kB Video SRAM for video processing.



^{*} In fax mode, if halftone is selected at standard or detail resolution, sub scan resolution is converted as shown in the diagram, before any digital image processing is done.

H516D546.wmf

Details

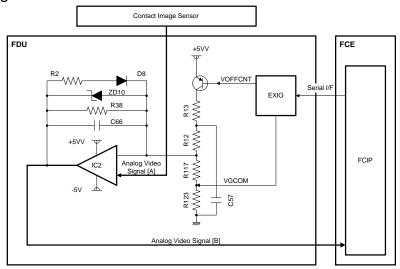
Cross-reference

Group 3 Facsimile Manual, section 2-3

The DIP carries out the following image processing on the data (refer to the flow chart on the previous page).

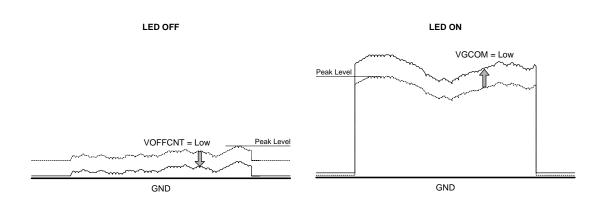
Preliminary Processing

- 1. A/D conversion
 - The multiplexer selects the data from the image sensor, then the DIP converts this to an 8 bit digital signal.
- 2. Video signal correction



H516D564.wmf

- The image sensor generates a certain voltage even if the scanner lamp is not turned on. To correct for this, the machine automatically adjusts the ground level of the sensor output by switching the VOFFCNT signal in the above diagram, if the peak voltage of the analog video signal [B] exceeds 234 mV in this condition.
- Then, the machine adjusts the signal's amplification ratio by switching the VGCOM signal, if the peak output level of the analog video signal while the scanner lamp is on is lower than 1.72V.
- The machine will execute the above adjustments automatically, just before scanning the first page. Refer to the waveforms on the next page for a diagram of how these adjustment processes work.



H516D565.wmf

If Halftone was not selected

1. Background Detection

 Each pixel is tested in relation to its neighbours to determine whether it is background noise and should be deleted.

2. MTF

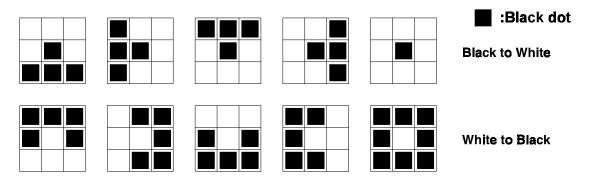
 MTF (Modulation Transfer Function) can reproduce details such as thin lines, points, and complex characters.

3. Thresholding

 Each video data element is compared against the threshold level, which depends on the contrast selected by the user.

4. Erasure of irregular dots

If an element after being converted to white or black by the above thresholding is irregular against the surrounded pixels, it is output in the opposite color. The central pixel is compared with the surrounding eight pixels to determine whether this process is necessary. There are ten cases, as shown below, in which conversion is done. This results in a noise-free and clean image.



H516D547.wmf

5. OR processing

 When the user selects Standard or Detail resolution, the DIP will either do OR processing and/or skip alternate lines of data to convert the scanned resolution into the resolution required for transmission. (See "Sub Scan Resolution Conversion in section 2.1.1".)

If Halftone was selected

- 1. Gamma correction
 - Gamma correction corrects the response of the image sensor to the various shades in the gray scale from black to white.
- 2. Edge detection
 - Each pixel is tested in relation to its neighbours to determine whether it is on a edge of a image pattern.
- 3. Halftone process
 - Each pixel is converted to six-bit (0 63) using either the dither or the error diffusion formula. At the same time, if the pixel is on a edge of a image pattern, it is enhanced to to get a sharp outline.
 - Then, each pixel is thresholded with the corresponding threshold in a dither matrix or error diffusion matrix.

3. Video Processing Parameters

Some of the parameters used for digital image processing can be changed by RAM addresses.

1. Contrast

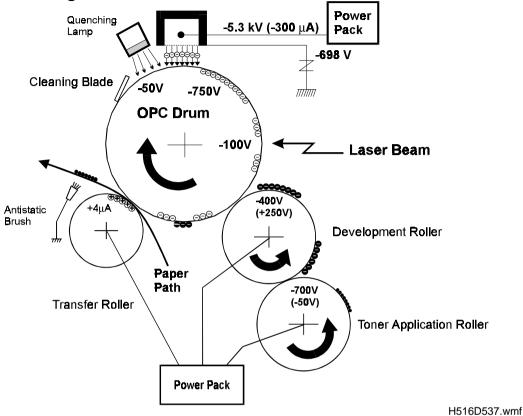
RAM addresses 800042 to 800047. See section 4-5 for details.

2. Image processing parameters

RAM addresses 8003FD to 800404. See section 4-5 for details.

2.2. PRINTING

2.2.1. Printing Process - Overview



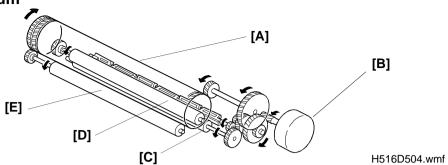
This machine uses a "write to black" system, using negative toner.

- The charge corona wire gives the drum surface a negative charge of about -750 V.
- The exposed area on the drum drops to about -100 V.
- The development roller carries toner to the latent image on the drum surface. The bias voltages during printing are as follows:

Toner application roller: -700 V Development roller: -400 V

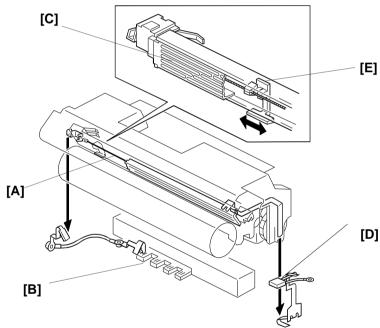
- The transfer roller pulls the toner from the drum onto the paper. A constant current of +4 μ A is applied. The antistatic brush helps to separate the paper from the drum.
- The cleaning blade removes any toner remaining on the drum after the image is transferred to the paper.
- The quenching lamp reduces the negative charge on the drum to about -50 V.

2.2.2. OPC Drum



An organic photoconductor drum [A] is used in this machine. The diameter of the drum is 30 mm. It is driven by the main motor [B] through a gear train. The toner application roller [C], development roller [D], and transfer roller [E] are also driven by the same gear train. The drum unit is replaceable by the customer.

2.2.3. Charge



H516D505.wmf

The CTM contains a charge corona unit. The corona wire [A] generates negative ions when the power pack [B] applies a constant current of -305 \pm 5 μA (the voltage is about -5.3 kV). The grid plate [C] ensures that the charge is uniformly spread out. The zener diode [D] ensures that the charge on the drum does not exceed -750 \pm 50 V.

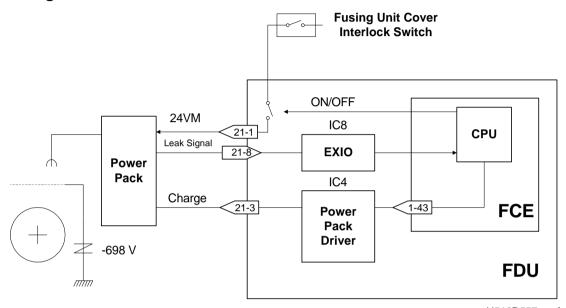
The charge corona unit contains a wire cleaner [E] for user maintenanace.

The ozone fan on the left hand side of the machine provides air flow to the charge corona unit, and the ozone filter (a paper filter coated with carbon) decomposes the ozone generated around the drum by the corona discharge.

Charger Leak Detection:

The machine detects a charger leak error when the FDU CN21-8 stays low for 3 seconds or more (6 seconds or more at power on) either while in standby mode or while the corona wire is being charged. When this occurs, the machine warns the customer by lighting the Call Service indicator (error code 9-17).

Charge Control

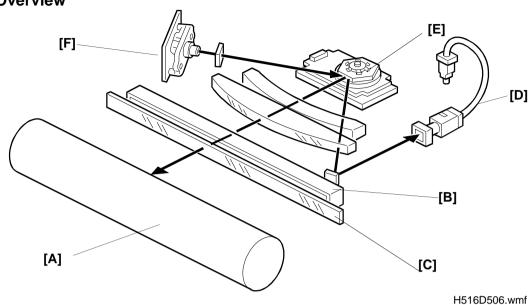


H516D557.wmf

In this machine, a higher corona wire current is used to counter black bands on copies. The charge on the drum exceeds the zener diode voltage because of this higher current.

2.2.4. Laser Exposure

1. Overview



The components of the laser section are the same as those described in the section 4-3-3 of the Group 3 Facsimile manual. The drum [A] is positioned in the same plane as the laser unit, so there is no mirror to change the optical path.

Points to note:

- The focusing lens [B] is a barrel toroidal lens.
- The shield glass [C] prevents toner and dust from entering the laser optics area.
- An optical fiber [D] passes the reflected laser beam to the laser sychronization detector circuit in the FDU.
- The shape of the mirror [E] is hexagonal.
- The strength of the beam emitted from the LD unit [F] is 5 mW at a wavelength of 780 nm.
- The dimensions of the dot on the drum are 85 μm by 85 μm.

The hexagonal mirror motor speed depends on the printing resolution:

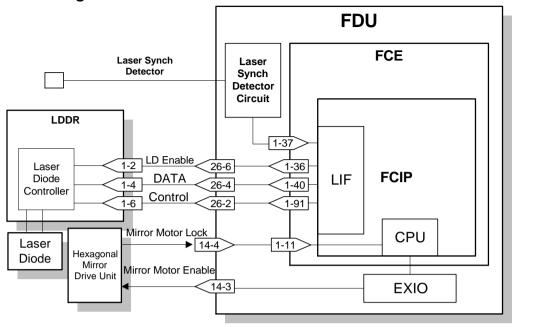
- Copy and G3 I/mm mode (16 x 15.4 dots/mm): 10402 rpm
- Printer mode (300 dpi): 7977.8 rpm

The charge on the exposed section of the drum drops to about -100 V while non-exposed areas it remains at about -750 V.

Cross reference

Group 3 Facsimile Manual: section 4-3-3

2. Block Diagram



H516D548.wmf

The LIF block in the FCIP monitors and controls the laser diode timing (FDU CN26-2) and transfers data for printing to the laser diode (FDU CN26-4).

Cross reference

Group 3 Facsimile Manual: page 4-3-13

3. Error Conditions

LD Failure:

The machine detects LD failure when the Laser Synchronization signal is not detected within 10 ms of the LD ready signal. When this occurs, the machine warns the customer with the Call Service indicator (error code 9-20).

Mirror Motor Failure:

The machine detects a mirror motor error when FDU CN14-4 does not go low within 10 seconds of the hexagonal mirror motor being turned on.

The machine also detects a mirror motor error when FDU CN14-4 goes back to high for 3 seconds or more during mirror motor operation. When either of these errors occurs, the machine warns the customer with the Call Service indicator (error code 9-23).

4. Print Density Adjustment

The FCIP controls print image density by changing the laser pulse width to adjust the width of the dots across the page. The beam strength is not adjusted in this model. The following table shows the relationship between the pulse width and the image density.

Mode		Print Image Density (User parameter 12, Bits 3 and 4)				
		Normal	Lighten	Darken		
Cany Mada	Normal	80 %	40 %	160 %		
Copy Mode	Halftone	80 %	40 %	160 %		
Fox Mode	Normal	100 %	40 %	160 %		
Fax Mode	Halftone	20 %	20 %	100 %		

To change the pulse width, the duty cycle of the laser pulse is changed. For example, to make the print density 40% of normal, the laser is only kept on for 40% of the normal duration for each pixel.

5. Toner Saving Mode

In this machine, toner saving is done by reducing the number of dots actually printed, not by varying the development bias. In toner saving mode, the image data is filtered through the following four-line matrix.

1st	line	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	•	•	•	•
2nd	line	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0				
3rd	line	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1				
4th	line	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0				

(1: Actual data printed, black or white; 0: Always a white pixel)

- **Note:** Toner saving mode only works when printing fax messages and reports. (However, toner saving is disabled when receiving a halftone mode message in NSF/NSS mode.)
 - When toner saving mode is selected, the print image density is automatically set to "Normal"; in some cases, the image may become invisible if the Lighter setting is used.

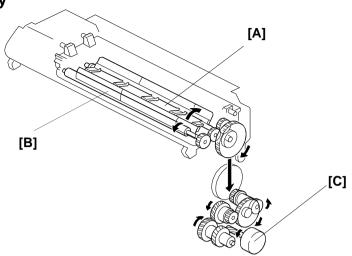
Cross Reference

Toner Saving Mode: User parameter 12, bit 2

Edge Enhancement

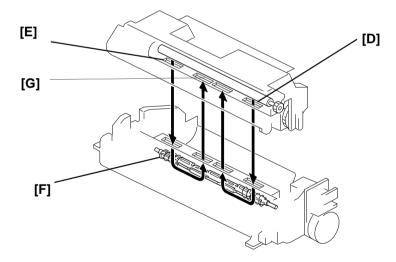
In toner saving mode, the machine prints a black pixel whenever the data changes from white to black in the main scan direction. In this way, edges on the image are printed more clearly.

2.2.5. Toner Supply



H516D517.wmf

This machine uses monocomponent toner, which is composed of resin and ferrite. The toner mixing bar [A] stirs and carries toner to the toner supply roller [B]. The toner supply roller supplies toner to the development unit. The main motor [C] drives the toner supply mechanism through a gear train.



H516D549.wmf

Toner is supplied to the development unit from the outer openings [D, E] in the CTM. The spiral mechanism [F] on the toner supply bar distributes toner through the development unit.

Openings in the central area of the CTM [G] allow toner to circulate upwards from the development unit. This circulation prevents excessive toner supply to the development unit and ensures that the toner remains fresh (this helps to prevent blurred images).

Initial Toner Supply Mode

When the first CTM is installed in a new machine, the machine automatically supplies toner to the development unit for 90 seconds. This will also be done automatically after a RAM reset level 1 or 2 is performed.

Initial toner supply mode must be executed by a technician when the development unit is replaced.

Cross Reference

Initial Toner Supply: RAM address 8003C1 (See sections 4.5 and 5.6.4 for more details)

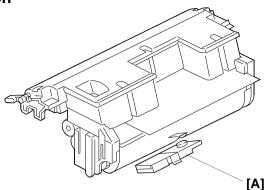
CTM Detection

At the following times, the machine detects if a CTM is installed by checking the power supply to the quenching lamp (this is part of the CTM).

- At power-up.
- When the machine comes back to normal mode from the Level 2 Power Saver Mode.
- When the cover is opened and then closed.

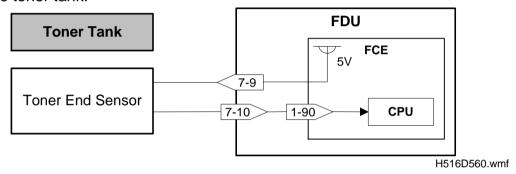
The machine disables all printing processes if a CTM is not installed.

Toner End Detection



H516D524.wmf

Toner near-end is detected by the toner end sensor [A], which is located below the toner tank.



While the main motor is rotating, the machine detects toner end by the voltage output from the toner end sensor . The voltage from the sensor is close to 5 V when the toner tank is full and becomes low when toner is almost empty.

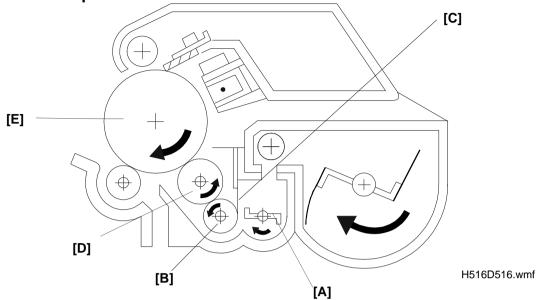
Toner near-end condition: When the cpu detects a low output from the toner end sensor for more than 30 s, the cpu starts to blink the Add Toner indicator. This is the toner near-end condition.

Toner end condition: After toner near-end is detected, the machine can print 100 more sheets, then the cpu disables printing (this is the toner end condition).

The machine clears the toner near-end or toner end condition when the power is switched off and back on or when the cover is opened and closed, if the output from the toner end sensor goes back high again.

However, when the machine is turned off/on or when the cover is opened and then closed, the machine requires about 30 s to check for a toner near-end condition again. So, if the user prints something within this 30 s period without changing the CTM, the machine will allow the printout to be made, but the print quality may be poor.





Overview

There are two rollers in the development unit: the Toner Application Roller [B] and the Development Roller [D].

The toner supply bar [A] stirs and carries toner to the toner application roller [B]. Toner is attracted to the toner application roller because it has a magnetic layer. As the toner application roller turns past the toner metering blade [C], only a thin coating of negatively charged toner particles stays adhered. (Refer to section 4-4-2 of the Group 3 Facsimile manual.)

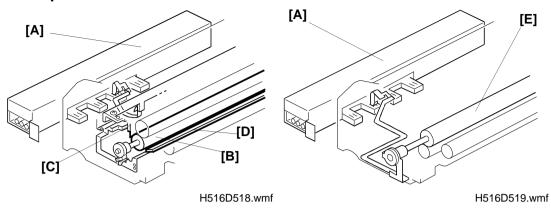
During printing, a bias voltage of -700 V is applied to the toner application roller and another bias voltage of -400 V is applied to the development roller. The toner is carried from the toner application roller to the development roller [D] by the potential difference between these two rollers.

The exposed area on the drum [E] is at -100 V. The development roller applies toner to these areas of the latent image as they turn past the drum.

The development roller is made of a soft rubber so it does not damage the surface of the drum. The development roller is provided as a separate spare part because it always contacts the toner application roller, and so may become dented.

The speed ratio between the drum, development roller, and the toner application roller is about 1:1:3. The toner application roller rotates three times as fast as the development roller, so it deposits a layer of toner three times as thick on the development roller. This leads to a clearer image. Also, the toner application roller rotates in the opposite direction to the development roller, which helps to keep the toner level on the development roller.

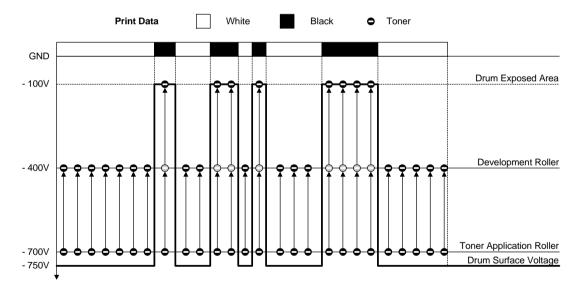
Development Bias



The power pack [A] applies one voltage to the toner application roller [B], toner metering blade [C], and bias brush [D], and a different voltage to the development roller [E].

Bias Control (During Printing)

A charge of -700 ± 40 V is applied to the toner application roller, and -400 ± 10 V is applied to the development roller. Toner transfers from the toner application roller to the development roller and on to the laser exposed areas on the drum as shown below.



H516D555.wmf

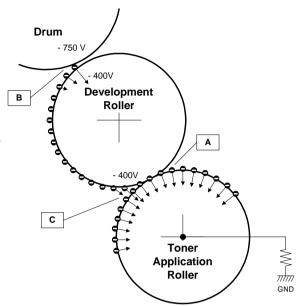
Bias Control (After Each Page)

After each page, the machine removes toner from the development roller and returns it to the development unit. To do this, -400V is applied to the development roller, but no bias is applied to the toner application roller.

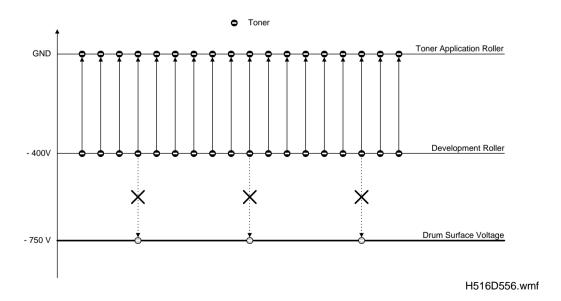
Toner does not transfer to the development roller at "A", but remains on the toner application roller when it passes between the two rollers.

The remaining toner on the develoment roller does not transfer to the drum at "B", but transfers to the toner application roller at "C".

In some cases, positively charged toner may transfer to the drum in this condition. So, a positive current is applied to the transfer roller after each page, so that the positively charged toner does not transfer to the transfer roller.

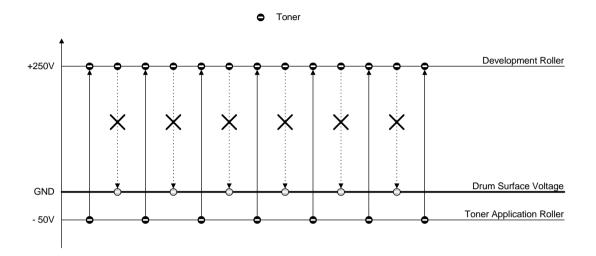


H516D551.wmf



Bias Control (Other)

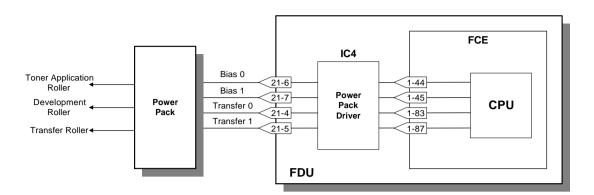
At the start and the end of any print process (including the cleaning and initial toner supply modes), -50 ± 50 V is applied to the toner application roller, and $+250 \pm 15$ V is applied to the development roller. This is to avoid any toner transfer to the drum.



H516D550.wmf

Note that the voltage difference between the toner application and development rollers is kept the same as in printing, at 300 V. This keeps the same amount of toner on the development roller at all times during the print run.

Bias Control Circuit



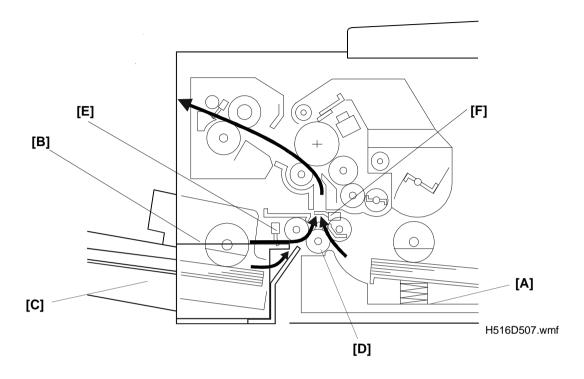
H516D552.wmf

The cpu controls the voltages to the toner application and development rollers using the Bias 0 and Bias 1 signals as shown in the following table.

In	Bias 0	Low	High	Low	High
In –	Bias 1	Low	Low	High	High
Out	Toner Application Roller	- 700 V	- 50 V	Off	Off
	Development Roller	-400 V	+ 250 V	-400 V	Off

2.2.7. Paper Feed

1. Overview



The standard cassette [A] holds 250 sheets and the bypass feed slot [B] feeds 1 sheet at a time. An optional 100 sheet cassette [C] is available.

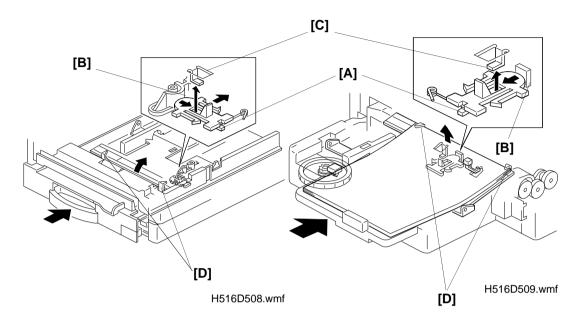
The registration roller [D] rotates counter-clockwise when the standard cassette is used. It rotates clockwise when the bypass feed slot [B] or the 100 sheet cassette is used.

When a sheet of paper is placed in the bypass feed slot, the bypass feed sensor [E] is turned on, and the machine prefeeds the paper until the registration sensor [F] is turned on.

Note that the bypass feed slot can be used only for copying or for printing from the PC using the optional printer interface.

2. Paper Lift Mechanism

Standard and Optional 100 Sheet Cassette



When the cassette is closed after paper is loaded, the slide lock [A] is pushed by the projection [B] and comes off the bottom hook [C].

Once the slide lock comes off, the bottom plate is raised by the pressure springs and the top sheet pushes up against the corner separators [D]. This keeps the stack of paper at the correct height.

H516D510.wmf

3. Paper Size and Paper End Detection

Standard Cassette/Optional Universal Cassette

The paper size detector [A] is located at the front of the cassette.

The machine determines which size cassette is installed by monitoring three microswitches.

The machine informs the customer with the Add Paper indicator if the paper size cannot be detected.

When the cassette runs out of paper, the paper end sensor actuator [B] drops through a slot in the bottom plate.

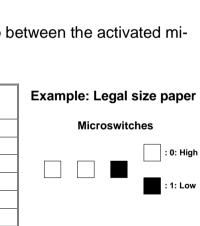


- USA model: Letter, (Legal when the optional Universal cassette is installed)
- Europe model: A4, A5 sideways
- Asia model: A4, A5 sideways, F/F4

The following diagram shows the relationship between the activated microswitches and the selected paper size.

Microswitch	USA Model	Europe Model	Asia Model	
000				
001	Legal			
010				
011	Letter			
100			F/F4	
101		A4	A4	
110				
111		A5 sideways	A5 sideways	

Note: "----" indicates that the machine detects that a cassette is not installed.



[A]

[B]

H516D558.wmf

Bypass Feed Slot

This machine does not detect paper width when the bypass feed slot is used.

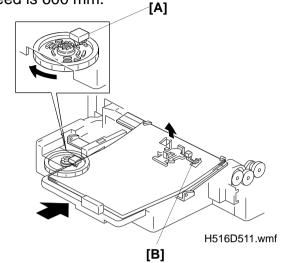
The maximum feed length for bypass feed is 600 mm.

The mimimum feedable paper width is 191 mm.

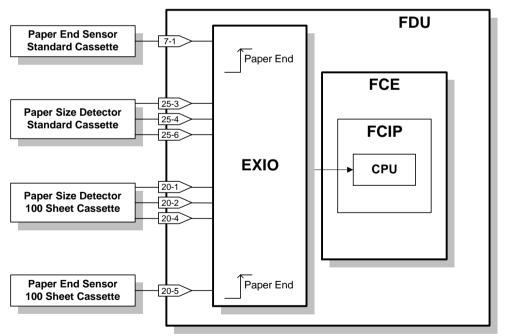
Optional 100 Sheet Cassette

The paper size detector [A] is located at the left hand side of the 100 sheet cassette. The microswitches work in the same way as in the standard cassette.

When the 100 sheet cassette runs out of paper, the paper end sensor actuator [B] drops through a slot to detect paper end.



Paper Size/Paper End Detection



H516D559.wmf

4. Pick-up and Separation

Standard and Optional 100 Sheet Cassettes

The pick-up and separation mechanism is a corner separator type. The corner separators and the paper feed rollers allow only one sheet to feed.

Cross reference

Group 3 Facsimile Manual: section 4-5-4

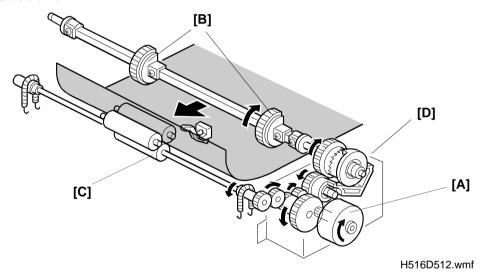
The paper feed motor starts to rotate when the printer is ready for printing.

By-pass Feed Slot

There is no pick-up or separation system in the by-pass feed slot. Only one sheet can be fed from this slot.

5. Drive Mechanism

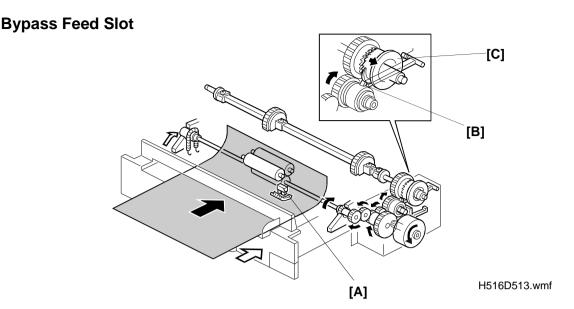
Standard Cassette



The paper feed motor [A] drives the pick-up and feed mechanism. When the standard cassette is used, the paper feed motor turns clockwise, driving the paper feed rollers [B] and the registration roller [C], as shown in the diagram.

The clutch gear box assembly [D] only allows the paper feed roller to turn once for each sheet of paper.

While the registration roller turns counter-clockwise, paper cannot be fed into the machine from the optional 100 sheet cassette or bypass feed slot. This means that if a sheet of paper is placed in the bypass feed slot during printing from the standard cassette, this sheet will not be fed into the machine.



When a sheet of paper is placed in the bypass feed slot, the bypass feed sensor [A] is turned on. The machine turns the paper feed motor counterclockwise to prefeed the paper until the registration sensor is turned on, or for 1 second, whichever is first. (See section 2-2-8 for a diagram of the registration sensor.)

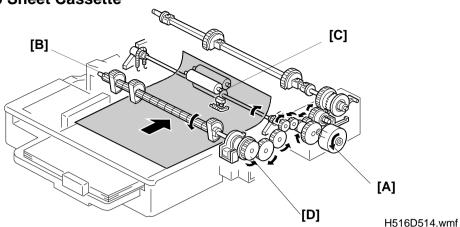
When the paper feed motor turns counter-clockwise, the projection [B] disengages the gear [C] inside the clutch gear box assembly as shown in the diagram. This prevents any drive from being transmitted to the paper feed rollers for the standard cassette.

If a sheet of paper remains in the bypass feed slot for longer than the Auto Reset Time (System Switch 0B), the machine will automatically feed it out. The machine will not print incoming fax messages while there is a sheet of paper in the bypass feed slot, so feeding out the page after the Auto Reset time allows incoming faxes to be printed even if someone leaves paper in the bypass feed slot.

Sheets of paper longer than about 600 mm cannot be fed from the bypass feed slot, or a paper jam will occur (error code 9-81).

Note that the bypass feed slot can be used only for copying and for printing from the PC using the optional printer interface.

Optional 100 Sheet Cassette



When the machine feeds a sheet of paper from the 100 sheet cassette, the paper feed motor [A] turns counter-clockwise to drive the paper feed rollers [B] and the registration roller [C] as shown in the diagram.

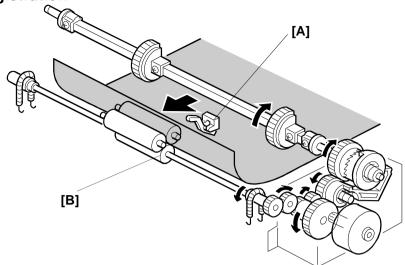
The paper feed clutch [D] in the optional 100 sheet cassette ensures that the paper feed roller rotates only once for each sheet of paper.

Paper Feed Priority

If there is an optional cassette installed in the machine, the priority for paper feed is decided in accordance with the following rules.

- The paper in the bypass feed slot has the first priority (for copying and printing from a PC only).
- If the cassettes contain the same paper size, the 100 sheet cassette is used first.
- If the cassettes contain different sizes, the machine selects the paper size as explained in section 2-2-13.

2.2.8. Registration



H516D515.wmf

The registration sensor [A] is positioned above the registration roller [B].

When a cassette (Standard, Universal, or 100 Sheet Cassette) is used, the machine stops the paper feed motor for a few moments when the registration sensor is turned on.

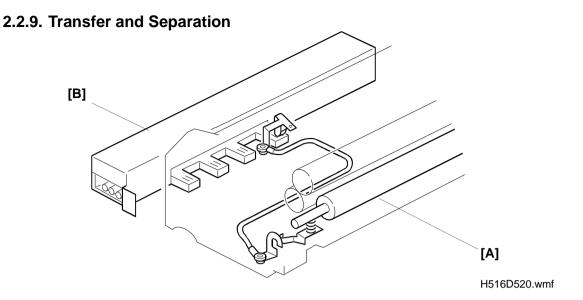
When the bypass feed slot is used, the machine prefeeds the paper until the registration sensor is turned on (or for 1 second, whichever comes first).

Then, the paper feed motor starts rotating immediately after laser scaning starts.

When the leading edge touches the pressure rollers, the momentum of the paper corrects any skew.

Jam Detection

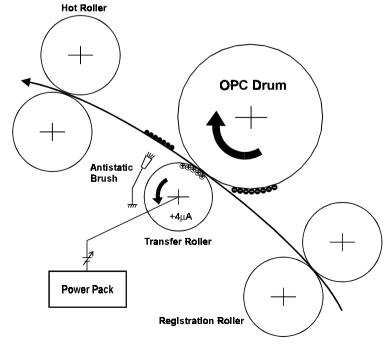
	Condition	Error Code
When the standard cassette is used	When the registration sensor is not turned on within 2.0 seconds of the paper feed clutch signal. (The standard cassette mechanism does not use the paper feed clutch, but the cpu sends it a signal anyway, and the jam timing starts from this signal.)	9-07
When the standard, 100 sheet cassette,	When the paper feed out sensor is not turned on within 2.6 seconds after the paper feed motor starts to feed paper for printing (not for prefeed).	9-08
or bypass feed slot is used	When the registration sensor is not turned off within X seconds after it turned on. X seconds = (paper length / 67.546) + 3 seconds (67.546 mm/ s : paper feed speed)	9-08
When the bypass feed slot is used	When the registration sensor is not turned on within 2 seconds after the paper feed motor starts rotating for printing. (This error is not generated during prefeed, to allow the users to change their minds after putting paper in this slot. When the bypass feed sensor is turned on, the machine prefeeds the paper for up to 1 second and stops feeding even if the registration sensor is not turned on. If the registration sensor did not turn on at prefeed, the machine checks for the above error.)	9-80
	When the bypass feed sensor is not turned off within 11.9 seconds after it is turned on. Using the same formula as above (error code 9-08), it works out that individual sheets cannot be longer than about 60 cm.	9-81
When the 100 sheet cassette is used.	When the registration sensor is not turned on within 2.0 seconds of the paper feed clutch turning on.	9-82



Instead of using a transfer corona wire, this machine uses a transfer roller, which touches the drum surface.

A constant current of $+4 \pm 0.2~\mu A$ is applied to the transfer roller [A] from the power pack [B]. The positively biased transfer roller pulls negatively charged toner off the drum. The curvature of the drum and the antistatic brush helps the paper to drop away from the drum.

Temperature and humidity have less effect on the supply of ions when the transfer current is held constant. With a constant voltage, ions may dissipate in some conditions.



H516D553.wmf

Cleaning Mode

If the paper size is smaller than the printed image, or if a paper jam occurs during printing, toner may be transferred to the the roller surface. To prevent this toner from transferring to the back side of copies, the transfer roller has to be cleaned before the next printing run.

While the machine is in the cleaning mode, the power pack supplies -1000V \pm 50 V to the transfer roller, and charges the drum to -750 V. The negatively charged toner on the transfer roller is then transferred back to the drum.

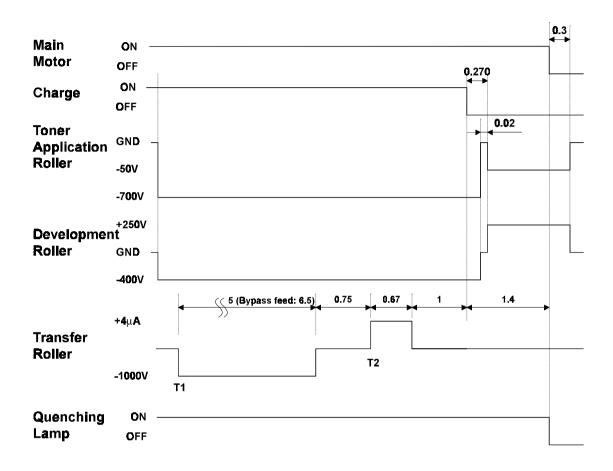
The machine goes through the cleaning mode in the following conditions:

- At power on (when the fusing temperature reaches half of the standby temperature).
- When the cover is opened and then closed during the printing process.
- After a printer jam has been cleared.
- After the bypass feed slot has been used (each page): This is done only if printer switch 00 bit 3 is set to 1.

The cpu controls the transfer roller voltage through the power pack using the Transfer 0 and Transfer 1 signals as shown below (for a circuit diagram, see Bias Control Circuit in section 2-2-6).

In —	Transfer 0	Low	High	Low	High
	Transfer 1	Low	Low	High	High
Out	Transfer Roller	+ 4 μΑ	- 1000 V	Off	Off

Timing Chart: Cleaning Mode

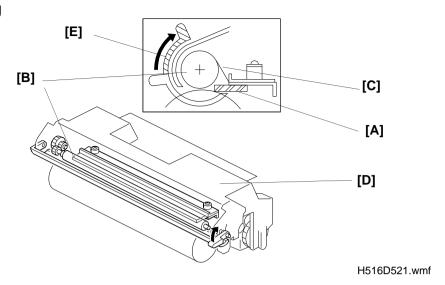


H516D563.wmf

Before cleaning starts, the main motor, charge corona, and quenching lamp turn on.

- T1. Cleaning bias is applied to the transfer roller.
- T2. A positive constant current of + $4 \pm 0.2 \,\mu\text{A}$ is applied to transfer back to the drum any toner which is positively charged by the transfer roller.

2.2.10. Cleaning



The cleaning unit and the used toner tank are contained in the CTM.

The cleaning blade [A] removes any toner remaining on the drum after the image is transferred to the paper. A magnetic roller [B] then brings the toner into the used toner tank [D]. The mylar blade [C] scrapes the toner off the magnetic roller into the used toner tank [D].

When the CTM is removed from the machine, the cleaning roller cover [E] is closed by a spring. This prevents removed toner from falling out of the unit.

There is no used toner overflow detection mechanism because the used toner tank is large enough for the lifetime of the CTM.

2.2.11. Fusing

Fusing Lamp Control

When the main switch is turned on, the machine turns on the fusing lamp and raises the fusing temperature to 80 °C in about 4 s. For printing, the machine raises the fusing temperature to 190 °C.

When the Power Saver Key is pressed or the power saver timer expires, the machine goes into a power saver mode. In Level 2 Power Saver Mode the fusing lamp is turned off. The user can select whether to keep the fusing lamp off or at 80°C during Power Saver Mode Level 1.

Cross Reference:

Power Saver Modes: Section 2-3

If the printing operation continues for more than 3 minutes, the machine keeps the fusing temperature at 180°C.

Points to Note:

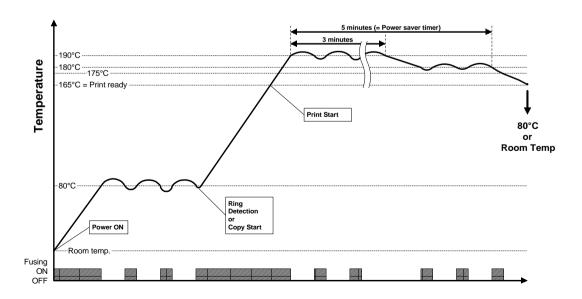
Standby temperature: 80 °C

Printing start temperature: 165 °C

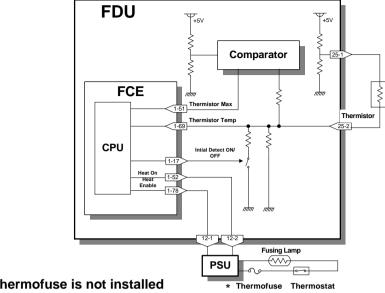
Printing temperature: 190 °C

Thermistor maximum: 250 °C (monitored by a comparator)

- Thermostat maximum: 150 °C (the temperature of the hot roller would be about 400 °C)
- Thermofuse maximum: 169 °C (the temperature of the hot roller would be about 400 °C) - The thermofuse is not used in USA models.



Fusing Control



* The thermofuse is not installed in the USA model

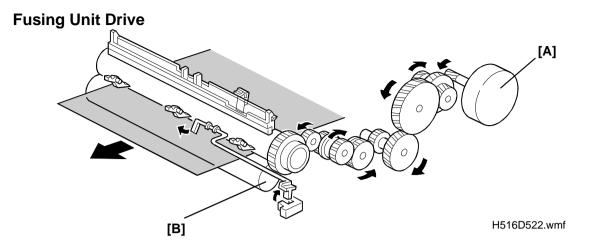
H516D562.wmf

During normal operation, the cpu controls the fusing lamp based on input from the thermistor using the above circuit.

When the machine is turned on, or when it comes back from the Level 2 Power Saver Mode, it checks whether the thermistor circuit is intact by temporarily closing the initial detect switch circuit on the FDU. If the thermistor is connected properly, the machine begins normal operation. If it is not, an Auto Service Call (error code 9-22, sub-code 09) is generated.

As a backup safety measure, when the temperature of the hot roller reaches about 400 °C, the thermostat and/or the thermofuse open (the thermofuse is not installed in USA models).

The machine turns on the cooling fan when the fusing temperature reaches 120 °C. It is turned off when the fusing temperature drops below 120 °C.



The main motor [A] drives the fusing unit through a gear train. The paper feed-out sensor [B] detects when the paper is fed out of the unit.

Jam Detection - Paper Feed Out

The machine detects a paper jam when the paper feed out sensor is not turned off within X seconds or more after it is turned on (Error Code 9-09).

X seconds = (paper length / 67.546) + 3 seconds (67.546 mm/s is the paper feed speed)

These conditions are the same for the standard (universal) cassette, bypass feed, and optional 100 sheet cassette.

Fusing Unit Service Call Conditions

	Conditions	Error Code (9-22)
At power on	If there is any problem with the thermistor. (This detection is also done when the machine comes back to the normal mode from the Power Saver Mode Level 2.)	Sub-code 09
Standby mode	If the fusing temperature stays below the standby temperature for more than 18 seconds when fusing lamp ON is selected in Power Saver Mode Level 1.	Sub-code 05
	If the fusing temperature takes more than 40 seconds to reach 165°C from the standby temperature.	Sub-code 02
During printing	If the fusing temperature stays above 190°C for more than 60 seconds.	Sub-code 01
	If the fusing temperature stays below 140 °C for more than 1 s during printing.	Sub-code 07
After printing	If the fusing temperature takes more than 20 minutes to go down to 100°C when the machine goes into the Power Saver Mode Level 1. (When fusing lamp OFF is selected for Power Saver Mode Level 1.)	Sub-code 03
	If the fusing temperature takes more than 20 minutes to go down to 100°C when the machine goes into the Power Saver Mode Level 1. (When fusing lamp ON is selected for Power Saver Mode Level 1.)	Sub-code 04
At any time	If the fusing temperature reaches 250°C.	Sub-code 08

2.2.12. Page Separation and Data Reduction

Incoming pages that are only slightly longer than the copy paper may be reduced in the sub-scan direction. Whether or not this happens depends on the settings of printer switches 04 and 05.

Reduction Enabled

If bit 0 of printer switch 03 is at 1 (Enabled), the data will be reduced in the page memory to fit on the copy paper. However, data will only be reduced if the length of the incoming page is between 5 mm shorter and a certain maximum length. This maximum incoming page length that can be reduced depends on the copy paper size and on the reduction ratio stored in printer switches 04 and 05.

Each paper size can be programmed with a separate reduction ratio. In each of the two bit switches, there is one bit for each possible paper size. The combination of the bit settings determines the ratio for that paper size.

Bit No.	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Switch No.	Not used	Not used	Legal	F, F4	A4	Letter	Not used	A5 sideways
Sw 04	0: 4/3		1: 4/3	0:	8/7	1: 1	2/11	
Sw 05	0:	():	1:		1:		

The following table shows the maximum incoming page length that can be reduced for each copy paper size. All length are in millimeters. The factory setting of the reduction ratio is 4/3.

USA Model

Copy Paper	Copy Paper	Maximum reducible incoming page length.					
Type	Length	Ratio = 4/3	Ratio = 8/7	Ratio= 12/11			
Letter	279.4	365.2	313.0	298.7			
Legal	355.6	412.4	400.3	382.1			

Note: The page memory cannot reduce incoming pages longer than 412.4 mm.

Europe/Asia Model

Copy Paper	Copy Paper	Maximum reducible incoming page length.					
Type	Length	Ratio = 4/3	Ratio = 8/7	Ratio= 12/11			
A5 Sideways	148	190.1	162.9	155.3			
A4	297	374.3	333.2	318.2			
F, F4	330.2	374.3	371.2	354.3			

Note: The page memory cannot reduce incoming pages longer than 374.3 mm.

Incoming pages that are longer than the maximum length will not be reduced, but will be printed on two pages and treated in accordance with the setting of bit 1 of printer switch 00. If this bit is 1, the bottom few lines of the page will continue from where the first page left off.

Reduction Disabled

If bit 0 of printer switch 03 is at 0 (Disabled), the data will not be reduced. However, if the incoming page is up to x mm longer than the copy paper, the excess portion will not printed. The value of x can be from 0 to 15 mm. It is determined by the setting of bits 4 to 7 of printer switch 03.

Hex value	Value of X						
0	0						
0	1						
and so	and so on until						
F	15						

Messages more than x mm longer than the copy paper will be printed out on two pages in accordance with the setting of bit 1 of printer switch 00 as explained earlier.

2.2.13. Paper Size Selection

If there is an optional cassette installed in the machine, the paper size to use is decided in accordance with the following rules.

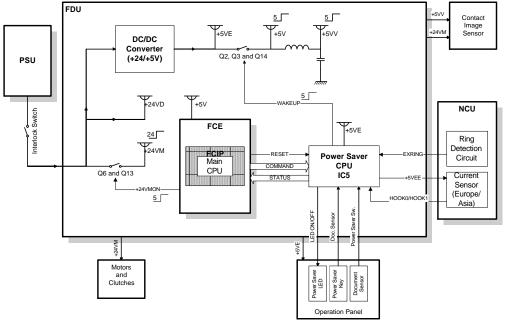
- If both cassettes contain the same paper size, the 100 sheet cassette will be used.
- If the received page has to be split up and printed on two pages, both pages will be the same size.
- If the cassettes contain different sizes, the paper size chosen for printing the received fax message is selected in accordance with the following table of priorities. The table assumes that reduction is enabled and that the reduction ratio is 4/3.

Received Fax		Selected Paper Size					
Message Size	A5 sideways	Letter	A4	F, F4	Legal		
A5 Sideways	1	2	3	4	5		
Letter	5(SR)	1	2	3	4		
A4	5(SR)	4(R)	1	2	3		
F, F4	5(SR)	4(R)	3(R)	1	2		
Legal	5(SR)	4(R)	3(R)	2(R)	1		

- The paper size priority is graded from 1 to 5.
- S: The data has to be separated and printed on more than on page.
- R: The data is reduced to fit on the printer paper.
- Some of the reports can be printed on A5 paper without page separation. However, if only A5 paper is in the cassettes, reports that need larger paper sizes will require page separation.

2.3. SYSTEM FEATURES

2.3.1. Power Saver Modes



H516D525.wmf

The machine has three levels of power saver mode as shown below.

	Normal	Level 0	Level 1	Level 2
Main CPU	ON	ON	ON	OFF
Power Saver CPU	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON
Power Saver LED	OFF	ON	ON	ON
LCD/LED	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
+5V Power Supply	ON	ON	ON	OFF
+24VM Power Supply	ON	ON	ON	OFF
Fusing Lamp	ON	Standby temp. or OFF	Standby temp. or OFF	OFF
+24VM Power Supply	ON	ON	ON	OFF

In power saver mode levels 0 and 1, the main CPU monitors and controls the system. The fusing lamp is either turned off or kept at the standby temperature, depending on the setting of User Parameter Switch 05, bits 6.

In level 2, the main CPU and dc power supplies are shut down. The power saver CPU monitors the power saver key, incoming calls, and the document sensor. When the power saver CPU detects activity at one of these, it activates the +5V supply with the WAKEUP signal to start up the main CPU.

The following sections explain how the machine controls these three modes. Note that power saver mode does not operate if an optional printer interface or RS232C interface is installed.

1. Going into a Power Saver Mode

The flow chart on the next page explains how the machine goes into a power saver mode, depending on parameter settings and other machine conditions.

Entering Power Saver Mode from Standby

- Power Saver Timer -

When the power saver timer expires since the last time a condition #1 operation was detected (see the flow chart), the machine automatically goes into a Power Saver Mode. See the points marked 1 on the flow chart.

Cross Reference

Power saver timer initial setting: System Switch 0B, bits 2 and 3 (1 minute, 3 minutes, 5 minutes, or Unlimited: Timer disabled)

- Power Saver Key -

When this key is pressed, the machine checks if there are any background operations in progress (these are the condition #2 operations on the flow chart). If there are none, the machine will automatically go into a Power Saver Mode. See point 2 on the flow chart.

Which Power Saver Mode is Selected?

If User Switch 05, bit 6 is set to maintain the fusing lamp at a certain temperature during Power Saver Mode, the machine enters Power Saver Mode Level 1. See point 3 on the flow chart.

If User Switch 05, bit 6 is set to keep the fusing lamp off during Power Saver Mode, the machine checks for events listed on the flow chart as condition #3 events (see point 4 on the flow chart). If none exist, the machine goes to Power Saver Level 2. If one or more does exist, the machine enters Power Saver Level 1 until the conditions are all cleared. then it goes to Power Saver Level 2.

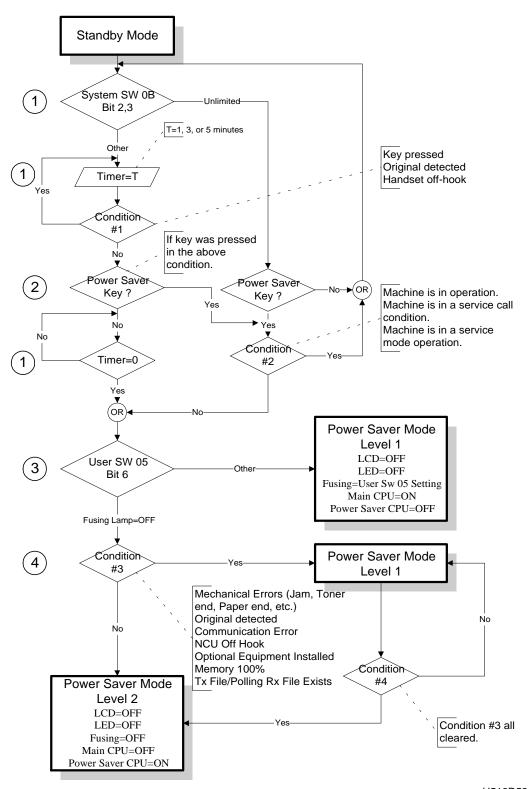
See the next flow chart for more details on how the machine changes from Level 1 to Level 2.

Cross Reference

Fusing lamp control during Power Saver Mode: User Switch 05, bit 6 (On at printing temperature, On at standby temperature, or Off)

Note

The "optional equipment" in condition #3 is either a Printer Interface or a RS232C Interface.



H516D526.wmf

2. Going into Level 2 Mode from Level 1 Mode

The flow chart on the next page shows in more detail how the machine goes from Power Saver Mode Level 1 to Level 2.

The machine will not go into Level 2 power saver mode if one of the following conditions exists.

- Either a tx/rx/polling file is stored in the memory.
- SAF memory not empty
- Mechanical error(s)
- NCU off-hook
- Optional equipment installed (a printer interface and/or a RS232C interface)

If there is a tx file in the memory

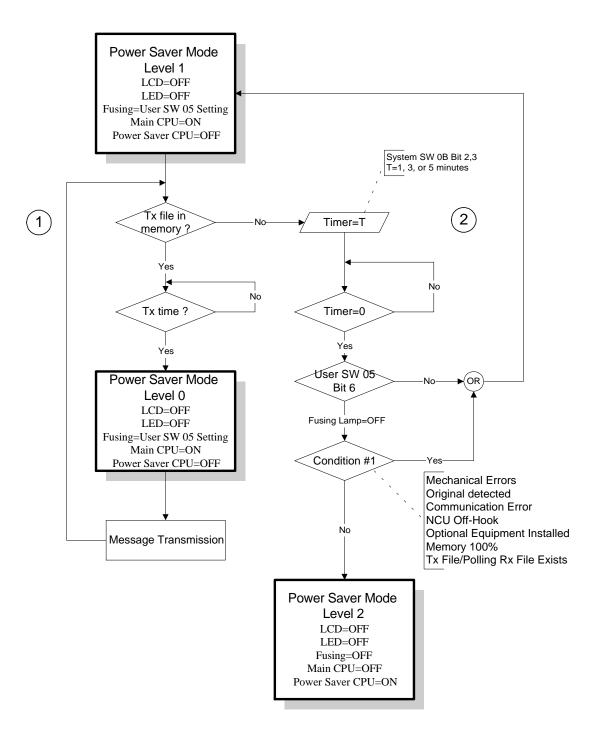
The machine stays in Power Saver Mode Level 1 until it is time to send the message. The machine then enters Level 0 while the message is sent. See point 1 on the flow chart.

When the Power Saver timer expires

When the power saver timer expires after the machine entered Level 1 for the first time (or, if a tx file was present, after the message was transmitted), the machine will enter Level 2 if both of the following are met:

- · User Switch 05, bit 6 specifies Fusing Lamp Off
- No condition #1 restrictions exist.

See point 2 on the flow chart.



H516D527.wmf

3. Receiving a Fax Message in Power Saver Mode

The flow chart on the next page explains how the machine receives a fax message while it is in a power saver mode.

Ring Detection

While the machine is in a power saver mode, the power saver CPU monitors ringing signals from the line. When the power saver CPU has detected two ringing signals, it activates the +5V supply to the main CPU and passes the ring detection process to the main CPU.

After the main CPU has detected a ringing signal, the machine goes to Power Saver Mode Level 0 and receives the fax into memory. Level 0 mode looks the same as the previous mode for users, but all the system components are active in the background for receiving a fax message.

See point 1 on the flow chart.

Printing

If either of the following conditions is not met (condition #1 on the flow chart), the machine will print out the fax message then return to Power Saver Mode in the manner described in the previous two flow charts in this section.

- Power Saver mode is activated during the Night Timer period
- The machine is currently in the Night Timer period.

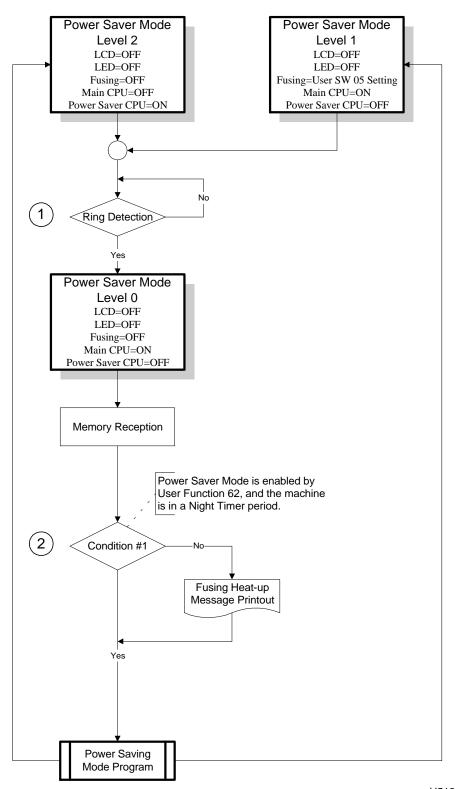
If both conditions are met, the machine returns to Power Saver Mode as described in the previous two flow charts in this section. It will print the fax message after the Night Timer expires.

See point 2 on the flow chart.

Cross Reference

Night Timer On/Off: User Function 62

Programming the Night Timer period: User Function 72



H516D528.wmf

4. Sending a Fax Message or Copying in Power Saver Mode

The flow chart on the next page explains how the machine wakes up from power saver mode upon a manual operation, and how it comes back to a power saver mode.

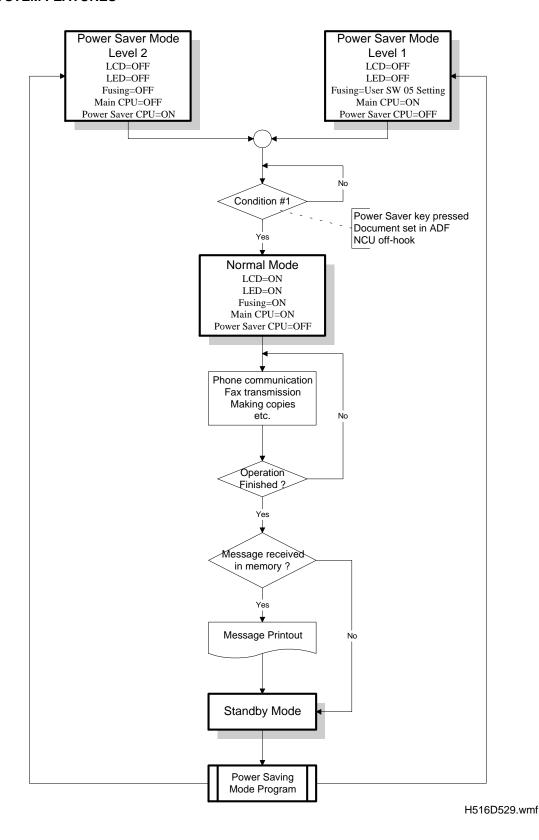
Manual Wakeup Conditions

While the machine is in a power saver mode, either the power saver CPU (Level 2) or the main CPU (Level 1) monitors signals from the following (condition #1 on the flow chart).

- Power saver key
- · Document sensor
- Off-hook detector on the NCU

When a signal from one of these has been detected, the CPU wakes up all the components and the machine enters normal operating mode, even during the Night Timer period.

After operations have been finished, the machine goes back to a power saver mode as explained in the previous sections.



2.3.2. Automatic Service Calls

1. Service Call Conditions

The machine makes an automatic service call when one of the following conditions occurs.

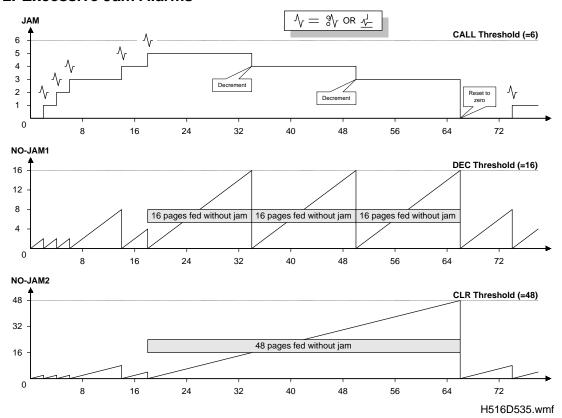
Service Call Conditions	Error Code	Sub-code (8003B5H)
Charge corona unit failure	9-17	11 or 12
Laser diode failure	9-20	21
Fusing lamp failure	9-22	01 to 09
Hexagonal mirror motor failure	9-23	31 or 32
Main motor failure	9-24	41 or 42
Excessive jams in the ADF/scanner	None	None
Excessive jams in the printer	None	None
The PM counter has reached the threshold (60,000 prints)	None	None
The PM interval has expired	None	None

Cross reference

Service station number: Service Function 13

Troubleshooting: Chapter 6

2. Excessive Jam Alarms



The excessive jam alarm automatically notifies the service station when the machine's scanner or printer frequently has jam problems.

Each type of jam has three counters allocated to it (JAM, NO-JAM1, NO-JAM2). Each of these counters has a threshold value (CALL, DEC, and CLR respectively; these can be adjusted.) The machine uses these counters to monitor jams as follows.

Each time a jam occurs: The JAM counter is increased by 1, and NO-JAM1 and NO-JAM2 are both set to zero. When JAM reaches CALL (6 by default), the machine sends an Auto Service Report with a System Parameter List.

If a sheet of paper is fed without a jam occuring: NO-JAM1 and NO-JAM2 are both incremented by 1. When NO-JAM1 reaches DEC (16 by default), NO-JAM1 is set to zero, and JAM is decremented by 1. When NO-JAM2 reaches CLR (48 by default), NO-JAM2 and JAM are both reset to zero.

The CALL, DEC, and CLR thresholds can be adjusted for each type of jam by rewriting RAM data. The addresses of these thresholds are given on the next page.

Parameters		Address (H)		Initial	Sys. Para.
		ADF	Printer	Settings	List
DEC (1 - 255; 0	= Disabled)	8001DD	8001E1	10 (H)	Х
CALL (3 - 15; 0	= Disabled)	8001DE	8001E2	06 (H)	Y
CLR	(Low)	8001DF	8001E3	30 (H)	
	(High)	8001E0	8001E4	00 (H)	_

Counters	Addre	Cyc Boro List	
Counters	ADF	Printer	Sys. Para. List
JAM: Jam counter used to place a service call	8001D6	8001DA	Z
NO-JAM1: Counter used for JAM counter decrement	8001D5	8001D9	_
NO-JAM2: Counter used for clearing the JAM counter	8001D7 (Low) 8001D8 (High)	8001DB (Low) 8001DC (High)	_

The system parameter list gives the current DEC and CALL thresholds and JAM counter value as X, Y, and Z respectively.

The Call Service indicator does not light for an excessive jam alarm, and the machine can be operated normally after the automatic service call has been made. Also, the counters related to the jam location are reset to zero automatically after the call. Then, the alarm is disabled until either bit 3 or bit 4 of address 80033D(H) is reset to zero.

3. Periodic Service Call

The periodic service call notifies the condition of the machine to the service station. The call is made periodically at a time interval programmed in the following RAM addresses.

	Address (H)	
	Call interval: 01 through 15 month(s) (BCD) 00: Periodic Service Call Disabled 800256	
Date and time of		
	Year: last two digits of the year (BCD)	800257
	Month: 01 through 12 (BCD)	800258
Day: 01 through 31 (BCD)		800259
	Hour: 00 through 23 (BCD)	80025A

To change these settings after programming, change the call interval. Then the machine automatically changes the remaining parameters by referring to the interval and the current date and time.

The Call Service indicator does not light for a periodic service call, so that the machine can be operated normally after it has sent the service call.

4. PM Call

If PM call is enabled, the machine will make an automatic service call when the PM counter reaches the PM threshold.

Program the PM call interval at the following RAM addresses. (Default setting: 60,000 sheets)

Address (H)	Bits 7 - 4	Bits 3 - 0
800194	Tens	Units
800195	Thousands	Hundreds
800196	Hundred thousands	Ten thousands

Cross reference

PM call enable/disable: System switch 01, bit 0

The Call Service indicator does not light for a PM service call, and the machine can be operated normally after it has made the service call.

5. Effective Term of Service Calls

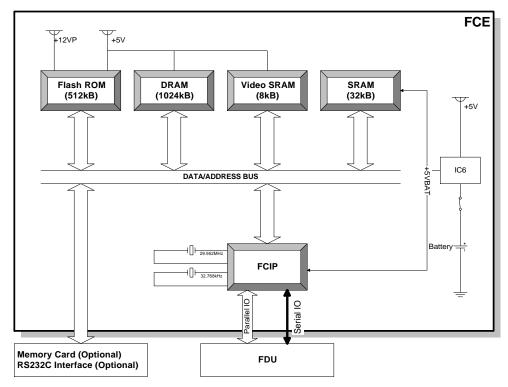
If a time limit for the effectiveness of service calls is programmed, the machine stops making automatic service calls after the time limit.

Program the time limit at the following addresses. This function is disabled when all of these addresses are 00(H).

	Address (H)
Year: last two digits of the year (BCD)	800261
Month: 01 through 12 (BCD)	800262
Day: 01 through 31 (BCD)	800263

2.4. PCBs

2.4.1. FCE



H516D530.wmf

1. FCIP (Facsimile Controller and Image Processor)

- CPU
- Modem (V.29, V.27, V.21)
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- Digital image processor (DIP)
- Laser interface (LIF)
- DMA controller
- Clock generation
- Stepper motor control
- Serial interface to the FDU
- DRAM backup control
- Ringing signal/Tone detection
- Fusing lamp control

2. ROM

512 kB (4 Mbit) flash ROM for system software storage.

3. DRAM

- 1024 kB DRAM shared between the Line Buffer (32 kB), ECM Buffer (64 kB or 128 kB), Page Memory (672 kB or 608 kB), and SAF memory (256 kB).
- Backed up by the battery on the FDU.

4. SRAM

- 32 kB SRAM for system and user parameter storage.
- Backed up by the battery on the FCE.

5. Video SRAM

• 8 kB SRAM for video processing.

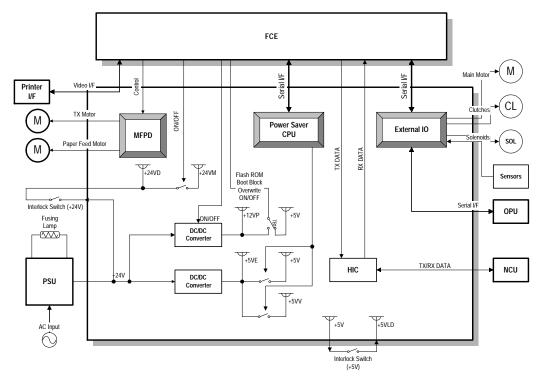
6. Oscillators

- 29.952 MHz oscillator for system clock generation.
- 32.768 MHz oscillator for the real time clock. This is backed up by the battery on the FCE.

7. Jumpers, Switches, and Test Points

Item	Description		
SW1	Switches the backup battery ON/OFF		

2.4.2. FDU



H516D531.wmf

1. Power Saver CPU

• 4 bit CPU for controlling the machine during power saver mode.

2. FPD (Facsimile Power Driver)

Stepper motor driver.

3. EXIO (External I/O)

- Serial interface to the FCE and OPU.
- Parallel interface to the main motor, clutches, and sensors.

4. HIC (Hybrid IC)

- 2-4 wire switching
- · Filters and amplifiers
- Monitor speaker driver

5. DC/DC Converters

- +5V generation
- +12V generation

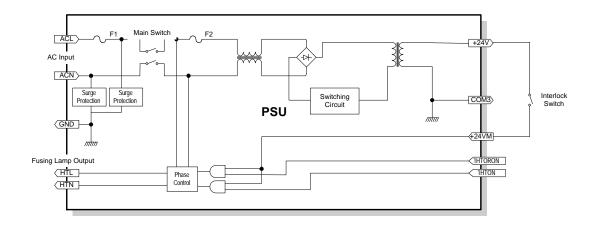
6. Interlock Switches

- The fusing unit interlock switch (+24V) disables the power supply to the drive components and the power pack.
- The fusing unit interlock switch (+5V) disables the laser diode power.

7. Jumpers, Switches, and Test Points

Item	Description
TP1	COM2 ground
TP2	COM1 ground
TP3	+5VE
TP4	-5V
TP7	Laser synchronization signal
TP6	Scanner clock
TP8	Scanner clock
TP9	Analog video signal input from the Contact Image Sensor
CN40-1	Analog video signal
CN40-2	Scanner clock
CN40-3	Synchronization signal
CN40-4	COM1 ground
TB1	Switches the power supply to the flash ROM boot block on the FCE
	1-2 pins shorted: +12V (the boot block can be overwritten)
	2-3 pins shorted: +5V (the boot block cannot be overwritten)
	Warning: Do not change this jumper setting, unless the boot block in
	the Flash ROM needs to be overwritten by Function 12.
	(Refer to Chapter 4.1.20 for more details.)

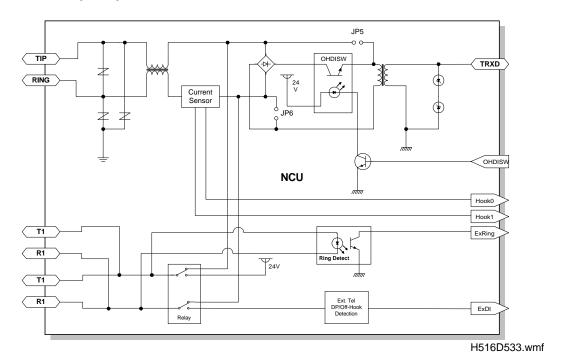
2.4.3. PSU



H516D532.wmf

- +24Vdc generation
- Fusing lamp ac power supply and control.

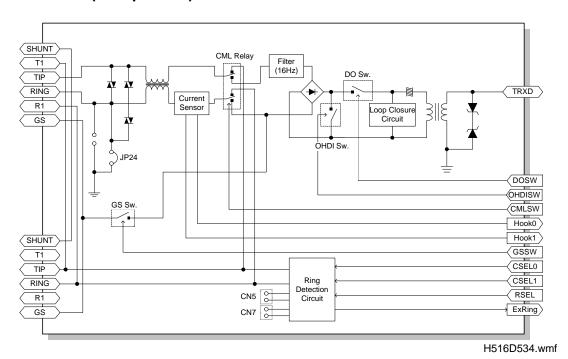
2.4.4. NCU (USA)



1. Jumpers

Item	Description
JP5	These jumpers should be shorted when the machine is connected to a dry
JP6	line.

2.4.5. NCU (Europe/Asia)



1. Control Signals and Jumpers

	CSEL0	CSEL1	RSEL	JP24	CN5	CN7
Country	CN2-4	CN2-5	CN1-13	JFZ4	CNS	
Germany	L	Н	Н	S	0	0
Holland	L	Н	Н	S	0	0
Austria	L	Н	Н	S	0	0
Italy	L	L	L	S	0	0
Spain	L	L	L	S	0	0
Ireland	Н	L	L	S	S	S
Finland	L	Н	L	0	0	0
Switzerland	L	Н	L	0	0	0
Other	L	Н	L	S	0	0
	L: Low, H:	High		S: Short,	O: Open	

3. INSTALLATION

3.1. INSTALLING THE MACHINE

Refer to the Operator's Manual for the installation environment and how to install and set up the machine.

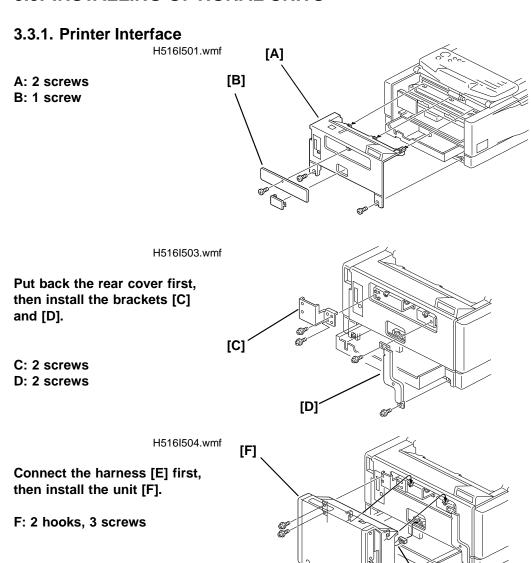
Refer to section 2.4.5 for how to set up the NCU hardware in each country.

3.2. INITIAL PROGRAMMING

Items to Program (Service Level)	Function No.
Country code (NCU parameter 00)	Function 08
Country code (System switch 0F)	Function 01
Protocol requirements (G3 switch 0B)	Function 01
PABX access code (RAM address 8000BB)	Function 06
Machine's serial number	Function 14
Service station's fax number	Function 13
PM call (System switch 01 - bit 0)	Function 01
Periodic service call (RAM address 800256)	Function 06

Items to Program (User Administrator Level)	Function No.
Clock	Function 91
Initial programming items (IDs)	Function 61
On/off switches	Function 62
Display/report language	Function 93
PABX access method (User parameter switch 13 - bits 0, 1) Function 6	
Fusing power control during power saver mode (User parameter switch 05 - bit 6)	Function 63

3.3. INSTALLING OPTIONAL UNITS



After installing the interface unit, do the following:

- Connect a printer cable from a PC to the machine.
- Turn on the machine, and check if the On Line indicator is lit or not.
- Enter user function 36 and print a setup sheet or a test pattern to check the controller. (Refer to the Operation Manual for the procedures.)

[E]

• Print a page from the PC to check the parallel interface.

3.3.2. Counter

H516I508.wmf

Remove the small cover [B] from the rear cover [A].

A: 2 screws

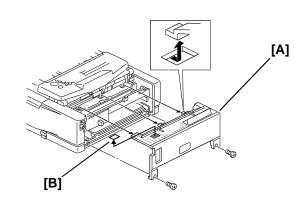


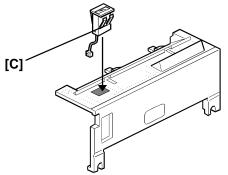
Install the counter [C] in the rear cover, connect it to the harness from the FDU, then put back the rear cover.

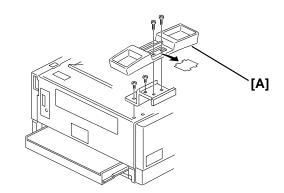


H516I515.wmf

Install the handset cradle [A] on the rear cover, then connect the handset to the NCU.







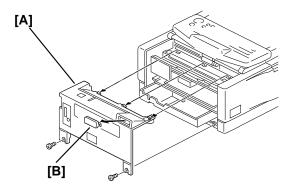
[C]

3.3.4. RS232C Interface

H516I505.wmf

Remove the small cover [B] from the rear cover [A].

A: 2 screws



H516I506.wmf

[D]

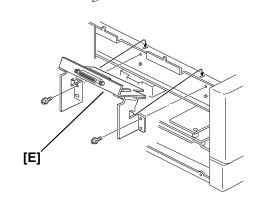
Attach the interface board [C] to the bracket [D].

C: 3 screws

H516l507.wmf

Attach the interface board assembly [E] to the machine, connect the harness to the FCE (CN3), then put back the rear cover [A].

E: 2 screws



The RS232C interface may not be available in some countries.

4. SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES

4.1. SERVICE LEVEL FUNCTIONS

In this section, frequently used keys are referred to with the following symbols.

- Start key
- D Stop kev

Function key

- Yes kev
- No key
- Up arrow key
- 🗹 Down arrow key
- Right arrow key
- Left arrow key

4.1.1. Bit Switch Programming (Function 01)

1 Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2 0 1 Yes

Bit 7 is displayed at the left, and bit 0 at the right.

SYS DF 0000 0000 BITSW 00: 0000 0000

3. Scroll through the bit switch menu: 🔳 or

COM DF 0000 0000 BITSW 00: 0000 0000

Example: To see the communication

switches: # × 3

Then scroll through the bit switches.

Increment bit switch:

Decrement bit switch:

Example: Display bit switch 3: x 3

4. Adjust the bit switch.

Example: To change the value of bit 7,

press 7

COM DF 0000 0000 BITSW 03: 1000 0000

- 5. Either:
 - Adjust more bit switches go to step 3.
 - Finish Function

4.1.2. System Parameter List (Function 02)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes 2. 0 2 Yes ①

2. 0 2 69 2

3. Finish: Function

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT
SERVICE FUNCTIONS

4.1.3. Error Code Display (Function 03)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2 0 3 Yes

ERROR CODE < > 1-01 JAN 01 17:30

- 3. Either:
 - Scroll through the error codes or or Finish -

4.1.4. Service Monitor Report (Function 04)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

- 2. 0 4 Yes 🕥
- 3. Finish: Function

4.1.5. Protocol Dump (Function 05)

Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 0 5 Yes

START

PROTOCOL DUMP

3.

4. Finish: Function

4.1.6. RAM Display/Rewrite (Function 06)

Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2 0 6 Yes

0-MEM.R/W 1-MEM.DUMP

3.

ADDRESS = 000000 DATA = 00

4. Input the address that you wish to see. Example: Address 800020

ADDRESS = 800020 DATA = 20

800020

Note: If you wish to move the cursor. press 🕑

5. If you wish to change the data, type in the new data.

ADDRESS = 800020 DATA = 80

Example: 80, press 8 0

Note: If you wish to move the cursor, press D

- 6. Either:
 - View more addresses go to step 4.
 - Function Finish -

4.1.7. RAM Dump (Function 06)



FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-MEM.R/W 1-MEM.DUMP



MEMORY DUMP START/N ADD.000000 - 0000FF

4. Enter the first four digits of the start and end addresses. For example, enter "8000" for start address 800000(H), and enter 8001 for end address 8001FF(H). Then, press "Start" to print the dump list. MEMORY DUMP START/N ADD. 800000- 8001FF



MEMORY DUMP

5. Finish: Function

4.1.8. Counter Display/Rewrite (Function 07)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT
SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-COUNTER 1-PM 2-CTM 3-OPU

3. Either:

Check the transmitted, received, scanned and printed page counters, and the printer and scanner jam counters - press 0

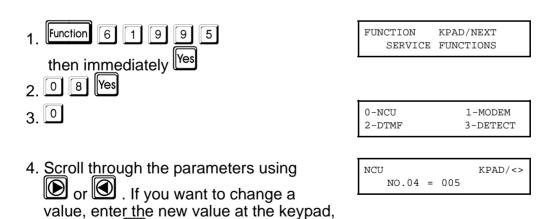
TX: 012345 RX: 012345

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES SERVICE LEVEL FUNCTIONS

(To see the scanned and printed SCAN 012345 PRINT 012345 page counters, press #. To see the printer and scanner jam count-S.JAM: 000000 000000 P.JAM: ers, press # again.) Check the PM counter - press 1 PM COUNTER: 001234 Check the CTM counter - press 2 CTM COUNTER: 001234 Check the OPU counter - press 3 OPU COUNTER: 001234 4. To change the contents of a counter, input the new value, then press Yes .

4.1.9. NCU Parameters (Function 08)

5. To finish: Function



then press Yes . **Example:** Set NCU parameter 04 to 005. Yes

5. To finish: No Function

Note: Parameter CC is the Country Code, Parameter 01 is the Tx level. Refer to section 4.3 for full details on NCU parameters.

4.1.10. Modem Test (Function 08)



FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-NCU 1-MODEM 2-DTMF 3-DETECT



MODEM TEST START/< > 800Hz

4. Scroll through the available tests using





- 6. To stop the test:
- 7. To finish: No Function

4.1.11. DTMF Tone Test (Function 08)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 0 8 Yes

0-NCU 1-MODEM 2-DTMF 3-DETECT

3. 2

- DTMF TEST START/<>
 TONE 0
- 4. Scroll through the available tests using or or .



- 6. To stop the test:
- 7. To finish: No Function

4.1.12. Modem Detection Test (Function 08)

Note: This function can be used only when G3 bit switch 0B bit5 (French PTT requirements) is 1 in European models. It cannot be used in USA models.



FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-NCU 1-MODEM 2-DTMF 3-DETECT



MODEM DET START/<> V21 300BPS

4. Scroll through the available tests using or or





6. To stop the test:

7. To finish: No Function

4.1.13. Ringer Test (Function 08)

Function then immediately Yes FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-NCU 1-MODEM 2-DTMF 3-DETECT



START RINGER

- 5 W
- 6. To stop :
- 7. To finish: No Function

4.1.14. Operation Panel Test (Function 09)



FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-LED/LCD

- 3. 0
- 4.
- 5. To stop the test, press
- 6. To finish: No Function

4.1.15. LED Array Test (Function 10)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT
SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 1 0 Yes

0-LAMP 1-ADF

3.

- 5. To stop the test, press
- 6. To finish: No Function

4.1.16. ADF Test (Function 10)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 1 0 Yes

0-LAMP 1-ADF

3. 1

START

- Place a document in the feeder, then press .
- 5. To stop the test, press
- 6. Finish: No Function

4.1.17. Printer Test Patterns (Function 11)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT
SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 1 1 Yes

0-PATTERN 1-MECH

3.

PATTERN PRINT KPAD

- 5. Press a key from to 4.
- 6. Press . A test pattern is printed.
- 7. To finish: No Function

START

4.1.18. Printer Mechanism Test - Free Run (Function 11)

then immediately

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT 9 SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2 1 1 Yes

0-PATTERN 1-MECH

3 1

MECH

⊿ ₩

5. To stop the test, press

6. To finish: No Function

4.1.19. RAM Tests (Function 12)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2. 1 2

0-SRAM 1-SAF 2-SAFCARD 3-M-->R

3. Either:

Press O Test the SRAM: Press 1 Test the SAF:

Press 2 Test the SAF card:

If test is successful, the display shows "OK". If test is unsuccessful, the display shows "ADDRESS=".

4. To finish: No Function



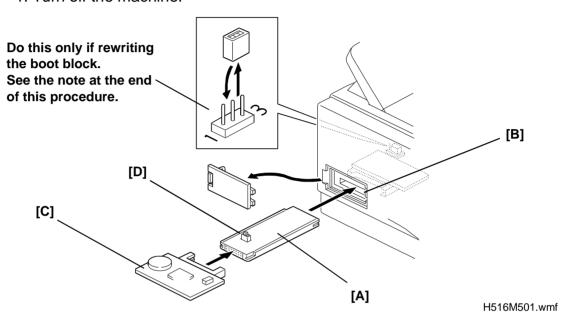
4.1.20. Software Download (Function 12)



Instead of replacing an EPROM to update the machine's software, use this procedure to update the software in the machine's Flash ROM.

This function copies software from an external medium to the Flash ROM on the machine's FCE. The external medium for the new software can be an FCE or an EPROM board.

1. Turn off the machine.



2. Insert the Flash/SRAM Copy Tool [A] into the IC card slot [B], then connect the FCE or EPROM board with new software [C] to the opposite side of the tool.

Note: The switch [D] on the tool [A] must be at the **ON** position.

3. Turn on the machine.









0-SRAM	1-SAF	
2-SAFCARD	3-M>R	



If the software is successfully downloaded, the display shows "OK".

OK!! COPY MACH <- FLROM

If the software download fails, the display shows "**NG**".

NG!! COPY MACH <- FLROM

- 8. To finish, press Function
- 9. Turn off the machine and disconnect the tool. Then turn the machine back on.
- 10. Print out the system parameter list and check the ROM version on it.

Note: In rare cases, the boot block will have to be rewritten. In such cases, you must do the following in addition to the above procedure.

- Before step 1, open the rear cover and change the jumper at TB1 on the FDU as shown in the diagram on the previous page.
- After step 3, set bit 5 of system switch 02 to 1.
- Before switching on the machine again in step 9, put TB1 back to the default position (2-3 pins shorted).



4.1.21. Software Upload (Function 12)

This function copies the software from the machine's built-in FCE to an external FCE.

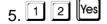
- 1. Turn off the machine.
- Connect the Flash/SRAM Copy Tool and an FCE as shown in the previous section.

Note: The switch [D] on the tool must be at the OFF position.

3. Turn on the machine.







0-SRAM 1-SAF 2-SAFCARD 3-M-->R



If the software is successfully uploaded, the display shows "**OK**".

OK!! COPY MACH -> FLROM

If the software upload fails, the display shows "**NG**".



7. Finish: Function

8. Turn off the machine and disconnect the tool. Then turn the machine back on again.



4.1.22. SRAM Data Download (Function 12)

This function copies all the data stored in the SRAM on an external FCE to the machine's FCE. Use this after replacing a damaged FCE to save any previous settings that were programmed in the damaged FCE.



2. Connect the Flash/SRAM Copy Tool [A] and the damaged FCE [C] as shown in section 4.1.20.

Note: The setting of switch [D] on the tool will not affect the result of this procedure.

3. Turn on the machine.



FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS



0-SRAM 1-SAF 2-SAFCARD 3-M-->R

6. 5

7.

If the SRAM data is successfully downloaded, the display shows "**OK**".

OK!! COPY MACH <- SRAM

If the SRAM download fails, the display shows "**NG**".

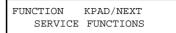
NG!! COPY MACH <- SRAM

8. Finish: Function

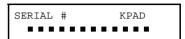
9. Turn off the machine and disconnect the tool. Then turn the machine back on.

4.1.23. Serial Number (Function 14)









3. Enter the machine's serial number at the keypad.

SERIAL # KPAD/Y/N RICOH 1234567

To correct a mistake: No

- 4. If the display is correct: Yes
- 5. Finish: Function

4.1.24. Service Station Fax Number (Function 13)

1. Function 6 1 9 9 5 then immediately Yes

FUNCTION KPAD/NEXT SERVICE FUNCTIONS

2 1 3 Yes



3. Input the telephone number of the service station that will receive Auto Service calls from this machine.

To erase the telephone number: press No



4. If the display is correct: Yes Function

4.2. BIT SWITCHES

∴ WARNING

Do not adjust a bit switch that is described as "Not used", as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Note: Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

4.2.1. System Switches

Sy	System Switch 00			
No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS
	RAM I	Reset		Reset Level 3: Erases all image data files stored in the SAF memory and communciation files (e.g. polling
	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Level	rx file). This setting is recommended for use when it is
	0	0	No reset	necessary to clear the SAF.
	0		Reset Level 2	Reset Level 2: In addition to those items erased by
	1 1	0 1	Reset Level 3 Not used	Reset Level 3, the following items are erased: own
0	'	'	Not used	telephone number, bit switches, RTI/TTI/CSI, report data, programmed telephone numbers (Quick/Speed/Groups, service station, etc.), NCU parameters, personal codes.
1				After erasing, the machine changes these two bits back to 0 automatically.
				No reset: Normal operation
				Cross reference
				RAM Reset Level 1 (Factory reset):
				Change the data in RAM address 800000(H) to FF(H),
				then turn the machine off and on. In addition to those
				items erased by Reset Level 2, the clock and
				scan/print registration settings are erased.

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES BIT SWITCHES

Sy	System Switch 00				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
2	Technical data printout on TCR (Journal) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Instead of the personal code, the following data are listed on the TCR for each analog G3 communication. e.g. V33 14 01 03 00 02 First number: Final modem type used Second number: Final modem rate (for example, 14 means 14.4 kbps) Third and fourth numbers: Line quality data. Either a measure of the error rate or the rx level is printed, depending on the bit 3 setting below. (An M on the report indicates that it is error rate, and an L indicates Rx level.) The left hand figure is the high byte and the right hand figure is the low byte (see the note below this table for how to read this value). If it is a measure of the error rate; a larger number means more errors. Fifth number (rx mode only): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception. Sixth number (rx mode only): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception. The fifth and sixth numbers are fixed at 00 for transmission records and ECM reception records.			
3	Line quality data output method 0: Measure of error rate (during image data transmission only) 1: Rx level	This bit determines the data type to be printed on the TCR (Journal) when technical data printout is enabled by bit 2 above.			
4	Line error marks 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If this bit is 1, a mark will be printed on the left edge of the page at any place where a line error occured in the data. Such errors are caused by a noisy line, for example.			
5	Communication parameter display 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see the next page). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing.			
6	Protocol dump list output after each communication 0 : Off 1 : On	This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing.			
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.			

How to calculate the rx level listed on the TCR (when bit 2 of system switch 00 is set to 1)

Example: V29 96 **L 01 0C** 00 00

The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after L indicates the rx level. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level.

In this example, the decimal value of 010C(H) is 268. So, the actual rx level is 268/16 = -16.75 dB.

Communication Parameters

Mode	DCS: ITU-T stand	dard	NSS: Non-standard G3
Modem rate	96: 9600 bps 72: 7200 bps 48: 4800 bps 24: 2400 bps		
Communication mode		SSC: Using SSC NML: With no EC	M, SSC, or EFC
Compression mode	MMR: MMR compression MR: MR compression MH: MH compression		
Resolution	SSF: Fine, transmitted at 8 x 15.4 dots per mm DTL: Detail, transmitted at 8 x 7.7 dots per mm STD: Standard, transmitted at 8 x 3.85 dots per mm		
I/O rate	2/M: 2.5 ms/line	10M: 10 ms/line 20M: 20 ms/line 40M: 40 ms/line	
Width and reduction	=A4: A4 (8.3"), no	o reduction	

Sy	System Switch 01			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	PM call 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This bit switch determines whether the machine will send an Auto Service Call to the service station when it is time for PM. Cross reference Auto service calls: Section 2.3.2		
1-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.		

Sy	System Switch 02				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Memory file transfer 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: All messages in the memory (including confidential rx messages) are sent to the fax number which is programmed as the service station. Always reset this bit to zero after transfer. Cross reference Service station number programming: Function 13			
1	Programmed data transfer (Back-to-back) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Do the following steps to transfer the data. 1. Connect two machines of the same type back to back and enable back-to-back communication on both machines. (For this machine, set bit 7 of the G3 bit switch 00 to 1.) 2. Set this switch to 1 on the receiving machine. 3. Insert a sheet of paper in the ADF, and press Start on both machines. The data is transferred. 4. Disable back-to-back comminication and set this bit to 0 after finishing.			
2	Not used	Do not change the setting.			
3	Memory file printout 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: All SAF files, including confidential messages, can be printed using Function 54 or 55. Always reset this bit after printing the messages.			
4	Not used	Do not change the settings.			
5	Software download area 0: All except the boot block 1: All areas, including the boot block Keep this bit at 0 except for the rare cases when the Flash ROM boot block has to be rewritten.	 0: This is the normal setting. For normal software downloads, do not change this bit switch. 1: Set this bit to 1 only when you need to rewrite the boot block in the Flash ROM using Function 12. Cross reference Software Download: Section 4.1.20 			
6	Memory read/write by RDS Bit 7 6 Setting 0 0 Always disabled 0 1 User selectable 1 0 User selectable 1 1 Always enabled	(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out. (0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03 (see below). Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired. (1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the			



machine.

Sy	System Switch 03				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on	00 - 99 hours (BCD).			
to	when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable"	This data is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable". The default setting is 24 hours.			

Sy	stem Switch 04	
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0 1 2	LCD contrast Bit 2 1 0 Contrast 0 0 0 Brightest 0 0 1 ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ 1 1 0 ↓ 1 1 1 Darkest	Use these bit switches to adjust the contrast of the LCD on the operation panel.
3	Dedicated transmission parameter programming 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This bit must be set to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters.
4	Inclusion of the Start key in Keystroke Programs 0: Not needed 1: Needed	0: The user does not need to press the Start key when operating a keystroke program.
5	OPC (master drum) replacement level 0: User 1: Service	O: The machine asks the user to replace the OPC drum at 30,000 print intervals (default interval). After the user replaces the drum, the machine asks the user if the drum is replaced or not. If the user answers yes, the machine resets the OPC counter to zero. The drum replacement interval is programmed at addresses 8001E5 to 8001E7(H). Refer to section 4.5 for more details. 1: The machine will not ask the user to replace the drum.
6	CSI programming level 0: User level 1: Service level	1: The CSI can only be programmed using a service function.
7	Telephone line type programming mode 0: User level 1: Service level	1: Telephone line type selection can only be programmed using a service function.

Sy	System Switch 05		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
1			
2	Display of both RTI and CSI on the LCD 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Both RTI and CSI will be displayed alternately on the LCD.	
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

Sy	System Switch 06			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Use of the Stop key during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Memory transmissions can be stopped by pressing the Stop key. However, users might accidentally cancel another person's memory transmission in progress.		
1-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.		

System Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)

System Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Sy	System Switch 09				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Addition of part of the image data from confidential transmissions on the transmission result report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If this feature is enabled, the top half of the first page of confidential messages will be printed on transmission result reports.			
1	Inclusion of communications on the TCR when no image data was exchanged. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	 0: Communications which reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the TCR (Journal). 1: Communications which reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the TCR (Journal). This will include telephone calls. 			
2	Automatic error report 0: Error reports will not be printed.				
3	Printing of the error code on the error report 0: No 1: Yes	1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.			
4	Listing of Confidential IDs on the Personal Code List 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Confidential IDs registered with Personal Codes by the users will appear on the Personal Code List.			
5	Power failure report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last.			
6	Not used	Do not change the settings.			
7	Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports 0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. number 1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports. Dial Label: The name stored with the Quick/Speed Dial number by the user.			

Sy	System Switch 0A		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 3	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
4	Dialing on the ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook 0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook.	
5	On hook dial 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: On hook dial is disabled.	
6	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
7			

Sy	ystem Switch 0B				
No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS	
0	Autom Bit 1 0 0 1		Timer setting 1 minute 3 minutes 5 minutes No limit	(1, 1): Automatic reset is disabled.(Other): The machine returns to the standby mode when the timer expires after the last operation.	
2	Power Bit 3 0 0 1 1	Bit 2 0 1	mode timer Time Limit 1 minute 3 minutes 5 minutes No limit	 (1, 1): Automatic Power Saver mode is disabled. (Other): The machine goes into a Power Saver mode when the timer expires after the last operation. Cross reference Power Saver modes: Section 2.3.1 	
4 to 7	Not us	sed		Do not change the settings.	

System Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)		
System Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)		
System Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)		

System Switch 10 - Not used (do not change the settings)

System Switch 11 - Not used (do not change the settings)

System Switch 12			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 7	TTI printing position in the main scan direction	08 to 92 (BCD) mm. Input even numbers only. This setting determines the TTI print start position from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may be obscured by the file number which is on the top right of the page.	

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Sy	System Switch 14		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 7	Wait time between pages in printer mode (with an optional printer interface unit)	05 to 64 (H) (5 to 100s) - This setting determines the machine's wait time between pages in printer mode.	

System Switch 15 - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 16 - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1B - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)
System Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.2.2. Scanner Switches

Sc	Scanner Switch 00				
No		FUN	CTION	COMMENTS	
0	Not use	ed		Do not change the settings.	
1	Not use	ed		Do not change the settings.	
2	Maximu docume Bit 3 0 0 1	ent le	nsmittable ngth Setting 600 mm 1200 mm 14 m Not used	If the user wants to send very long documents such as well logs, select 14 m or a higher setting.	
4	•	copyir on) bled	ng in immediate ng (Standard	 0: The machine scans the document in 3.85 line/mm steps, then transmits or makes copies. 1: The machine scans the document in 7.7 line/mm steps. Each pair of lines is OR processed before transmission or making copies. Toner may be used up earlier if OR processing is enabled. 	
5 to 7	Not use	ed		Do not change the settings.	

Scanner Switch 01 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Scanner Switch 02			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to FF. For a darker	
to	halftone disabled - Normal	threshold, input a lower value.	
7	setting	Default setting - 08(H)	

Sc	Scanner Switch 03				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to 0F. For a darker			
to	halftone disabled - Lighten	threshold, input a lower value.			
7	setting	Default setting - 0A(H)			

Scanner Switch 04			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to 0F. For a darker	
to	halftone disabled - Darken	threshold, input a lower value.	
7	setting	Default setting - 06(H)	

Scanner Switch 05			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to 0F. For a darker	
to	halftone enabled - Normal	threshold, input a lower value.	
7	setting	Default setting - 07(H)	

Scanner Switch 06				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to 0F. For a darker		
to	halftone enabled - Lighten	threshold, input a lower value.		
7	setting	Default setting - 08(H)		

Scanner Switch 07			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Contrast threshold with	The value can be between 00 to 0F. For a darker	
to	halftone enabled - Darken	threshold, input a lower value.	
7	setting	Default setting - 06(H)	

Scanner Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)
Scanner Switch 0F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.2.3. Printer Switches

Pri	Printer Switch 00				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Page separation mark 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: No marks are printed. 1: If a received page has to be printed out on two sheets, an "x" inside a small box is printed at the bottom right hand corner of the first sheet, and a "2" inside a small box is printed at the top right hand corner of the second sheet. This helps the user to identify pages that have been split up.			
1	Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: The next page continues from where the previous page left off.1: The final few mm of the previous page are printed at the top of the next page.See section 2.2.12 for details.			
2	Not used	Do not change the settings.			
3	Cleaning mode after bypass feed 0: Disabled 1: After each page is fed from the bypass feed slot	0: Cleaning mode is not done at all if bypass feed is used.1: Cleaning mode is done every time after a sheet of paper is fed from the bypass feed slot.			
4 to 7	Not used	Do not change the settings.			

Printer Switch 01 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 02 - Not used (do not change the settings)



Pri	Printer Switch 03			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Length reduction of received data 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	O: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. Cross reference Page separation threshold: Printer Sw. 03, bits 4 to 7. 1: Incoming pages are reduced in the length direction when printing. Cross reference Reduction ratio: Printer Switches 04/05 Page separation and data reduction: section 2-2-12		
2	Not used	Do not change the settings.		
3				

Pri	inter Switch 03	
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Page separation threshold (w	ith reduction disabled in switch 03-0 above)
4		
to	Hex value of bits 4 to 7	x (mm)
10	0	0
7	1	1
•	and so on until	
	F	15
	Cross reference Page separation and data red Length reduction On/Off: Prin	

Pri	Printer Switches 04 and 05				
No	FUNCTION		COMMENTS		
	Reduction ratios used for different paper sizes (with reduction enabled in switch 03-0 above)			duction enabled in switch 03-0	
		If reduction is enabled, the data will be reduced in the length direction before printing. These switches determine the maximum reduction ratio for each paper size.			
	Cross reference Page separation	~	on: section 2.2.12.		
0 to 7	Switch 04/05 Bit 0 Bit 1 Bit 2 Bit 3 Bit 4	US Not used Not used LT lengthwise Not used Not used	Europe A5 sideways Not used Not used A4 lengthwise Not used	Asia A5 sideways Not used Not used A4 lengthwise F/F4 lengthwise	
	Bit 5 Bit 6 Bit 7	LG lengthwise Not used Not used	Not used Not used Not used	Not used Not used Not used	
	The available pa	aper sizes depend	on the machine's co	ountry version.	
	$\left(\frac{Sw.04}{Sw.05}\right): \left(\frac{0}{0}\right) =$	$4\frac{1}{3}, \left(\frac{1}{0}\right) = 4\frac{1}{3}, \left(\frac{0}{1}\right) =$	$8/7, \left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = \frac{12}{11}$		

4.2.4. Communication Switches

Со	mmunic	ation	n Switch 00	
No	FUNCTION		NCTION	COMMENTS
	Compression modes available in receive mode			These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30
0	Bit 1 0	0 0	Modes MH only	protocol.
1	0 1 1	1 0 1	MH/MR MH/MR/MMR Not used	
2		le in	n modes transmit mode Modes MH only MH/MR MH/MR/MMR Not used	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol. Cross reference EFC compression in transmission: Communication Switch 01, bit 1.
4 to 6	Not used			Do not change the settings.
7	Closed network (reception) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled		vork (reception)	1: Reception will not go ahead if the ID code of the other terminal does not match the ID code of this terminal. This function is only available in NSF/NSS mode.

Со	mmunication Sw	itch 01	
No	FUNCTION		COMMENTS
0	ECM 0: Off 1: On		If this bit is 0, ECM is switched off for all communications.
1	EFC during trans 0: Off 1: On	smission	If this bit is 0, EFC is switched off during transmission.
2	0 0 N 0 1 8 1 0 4		 (0,1) - The machine will not transmit if the last 8 digits of the received CSI do not match the last 8 digits of the dialed telephone number. This does not work for manual dialing. (1,0) - The same as above, except that only the last 4 digits are compared. (1,1) - The machine will not transmit if the other end does not identify itself with an RTI or CSI. (0,0) - Nothing is checked; transmission will always go ahead.
4	Operator call if r is received in rep NSF/DIS 0: Disabled 1:	ply to	Set this bit to 1 if the user expects to receive phone calls at the same number which the machine is connected to.
5	Not used		Do not change the setting.
6	0 0 N 0 1 B	Setting No limit 34 and A4	The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).
		N4 Not used	

Co	Communication Switch 02				
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS			
0	Burst error threshold 0 : Low 1 : High	If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows. Resolution Standard Detail Low settings 3 6 High settings 6 12			
1	Acceptable total error line ratio 0: 5% 1: 10%	If the error line ratio of a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end.			
2	Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception 0: Deleted from memory without printing 1: Printed	0: Pages received with errors are not printed.			
3	Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up	0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received.1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN.This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used.			
4 to 7	Not used	Do not change the settings.			

Co	Communication Switch 03		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Maximum number of page	00 - FF (Hex) times.	
to	retransmissions in a G3	This setting is not used if ECM is switched on.	
7	memory transmission	Default setting - 03(H)	

Communication Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Со	Communication Switch 06			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Dialing requirements: Germany 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	These switches are automatically set to the settings required by each country after a country code (System Switch 0F) is programmed.		
1	Dialing requirements: Austria 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
2	Dialing requirements: Norway 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
3	Dialing requirements: Denmark 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
4	Dialing requirements: France 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
5	Dialing requirements: Switzerland 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			
6 7	Not used	Do not change the settings.		

Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)		
Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)		
Communication Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)		

Co	Communication Switch 0A			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing 0: From the error page 1: From page 1	0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time.1: Transmission begins from the first page.		
1 to 6	Not used	Do not change the settings.		
7	Emergency calls using 999 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	If this bit is at 1, the machine will not allow you to dial 999 at the auto-dialer. This is a PTT requirement in the UK and some other countries.		

Communication Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)

Co	Communication Switch 0D		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0 to 7	The amount of remaining memory below which ringing detection (and therefore reception into memory) is disabled	00 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 kbytes (e.g., 0C(H) = 24 kbytes) One page is about 24 kbytes. If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory space left. This will result in communication failure.	

Co	Communication Switch 0E			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 7	Minumum interval between automatic dialing attempts	06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s) This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination.		

Co	Communication Switch 0F			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0	Minimum number of times	01 - FF (Hex) times		
to	that a destination will dialed			
7	when TRD is being used			

Со	Communication Switch 10			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 7	Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 - FF (Hex) times		

Co	Communication Switch 11			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 7	Immediate transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 - FF (Hex) times		

Co	Communication Switch 12			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 7	Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	00 - FF (Hex) minutes		

Co	Communication Switch 13			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 7	Immediate transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	00 - FF (Hex) minutes		

Communication Switch 14 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 15 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 16 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 17 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 18 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1C - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.2.5. G3 Switches

G3	G3 Switch 00				
No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS	
0	comn		aker during ion (tx and rx) Setting Disabled Up to Phase B All the time Not used	 (0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. 	
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1:Enabled			Make sure that you reset these bits after testing. 1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.	
3 to 6	Not used			Do not change the settings.	
7	Back to back test 0: Disabled 1: Enabled			Set this bit to 1 when you wish to do a back to back test. 115 V model: Be sure to connect jumpers JP5 and JP6 on the NCU before doing the test. 220 V model: Be sure to apply dc voltage between wires L1 and L2 on the NCU.	

G3	G3 Switch 01			
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 3	Not used	Do not change the settings.		
4	DIS frame length 0: 6 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The 5th and 6th bytes in the DIS frame will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).		
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.		
6				
7				

G3	G3 Switch 02		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)	
1 to 4	Not used	Do not change the settings.	
5	Use of modem rate history during AI short protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications using AI short protocol always start with the highest modem rate.1: The machine uses the modem rate history for communications with the same machine when determining the most suitable rate for the current communication.	
6	Al short protocol (transmission and reception) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Al Short Protocol.	
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.	

G3	G3 Switch 03		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice.1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.	
1	Not used	Do not change the setting.	
2			
3	ECM frame size 0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	1: The machine transmits with a frame size of 64 bytes. Set this bit to 1 when the other terminal only has a 64 byte frame size.	
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: Ricoh mode (PPR x 1) 1: ITU-T mode (PPR x 4)	When using ECM, the machine will choose a slower modem rate after receiving PPR once (Ricoh mode) or four times (ITU-T mode). ITU-T: New acronym for the CCITT.	
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.	
6 7	Not used	Do not change the setting.	



G3	G3 Switch 04			
	FUNCTION	COMMENTS		
0 to 3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the sender that the training has succeeded.		
4 to 7	Not used	Do not change the settings.		

G	G3 Switch 05					
	FUNCTION	COMMENTS				
	Initial Tx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps)	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission.				
0	0 0 0 1 2.4k					
to	0 0 1 0 4.8k					
3	0 0 1 1 7.2k					
	0 1 0 0 9.6k					
	Other settings - Not used					
4 to 7	Not used	Do not change the settings.				

G	G3 Switch 06					
	FUNCTION	COMMENTS				
0 to 3	Initial Rx modem rate Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps) 0 0 0 1 2.4 k 0 0 1 0 4.8 k 0 0 1 1 7.2 k 0 1 0 0 9.6 k Other settings - Not used	The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem rate for the machine in receive mode. Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception.				
4 to 7	Modem types available for reception Bit 7 6 5 4 Setting 0 0 0 1 V27ter 0 0 1 0 V27ter, V29 Other settings - Not used	The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode.				

G3	G3 Switch 07				
	FUNCTION			COMMENTS	
0	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode) Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High		Setting None Low Medium	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error	
2	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode) Bit 3 Bit 2 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High		Setting None Low Medium	 Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently. 	
4 to 7	Not used			Do not change the settings.	

G3	G3 Switch 08				
	FUNCTION			COMMENTS	
0	PABX cable equalizer (tx mode) Bit 1 Bit 0 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High		Setting None Low Medium	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.	
2	PABX cable equalizer (rx mode) Bit 3 Bit 2 Setting 0 0 None 0 1 Low 1 0 Medium 1 1 High		Setting None Low Medium	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.	
4 to 7	Not used			Do not change the settings.	

G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3	G3 Switch 0A						
		FUNC	CTION	COMMENTS			
0	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data reception Bit 1 Bit 0 Value (ms) 0 0 200 0 1 400 1 0 800 1 1 Not used		Value (ms) 200 400	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.			
2	Not used			Do not change the settings.			
3							
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s		g image data	This bit set the maximum intervals between each EOL signal (end-of-line) or intervals between each ECM frame from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.			
5	Not us	ed		Do not change the settings.			
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s		eive mode	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. If this occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20.			
7	Not us	ed		Do not change the settings.			

G3	G3 Switch 0B					
	FUNCTION	COMMENTS				
0	Protocol requirements: Europe 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Program these bit switches manually to match local requirements.				
1	Protocol requirements: Spain 0: Disabled 1: Enabled					
2	Protocol requirements: Germany 0: Disabled 1: Enabled					
3	Protocol requirements: France 0: Disabled 1: Enabled					
4	PTT requirements: Germany 0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled					
5	PTT requirements: France 0: Disabled 1: Enabled					
6	Not used	Do not change the settings.				
7						

G3	G3 Switch 0C						
		FUI	NCTION	COMMENTS			
	Pulse	dialin	g method	P = Number of pulses sent out, N = Number dialed.			
	Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting				
0	0	0	Normal (P=N)				
1	0	1	Oslo (P=10 - N)				
	1	0	Sweden (N+1)				
	1	1	Not used				
2	Not used			Do not change the settings.			
to				3			
7							

G3 Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3 Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings)
G3 Switch 0F - Not used (do not change the settings)



4.3. NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and units of calculation of the parameters that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (Function 06), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (Function 08); if Function 08 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	Country code for NCU parameters	country coduse the decusing Fund Country France	ex value to program the de directly into this address, or cimal value to program it etion 08 (parameter CC). Decimal Hex
		Germany UK Italy Austria Belgium	01 01 02 02 03 03 04 04 05 05
807F00		Denmark Finland Ireland Norway	06 06 07 07 08 08 09 09
		Sweden Switzerlan Portugal Holland	10 0A nd 11 0B 12 0C 13 0D
		Spain Israel USA	14 0E 15 0F 17 11
		Asia Hong Kon South Afric Australia	•
		New Zeala Singapore Malaysia	and 23 17
807F01	Line current detection time	20 ms	Line current is not detected
807F02	Line current wait time		if 807F01 contains FF.
807F03	Line current drop detect time		
807F04	PSTN dial tone frequency range (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	See Note 2.
807F05	PSTN dial tone frequency range (low byte)		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807F06	Not used		Do not change the factory
807F07			setting.
807F08	PSTN dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 807F08 contains FF, the
807F09	PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)		machine pauses for the
807F0A	PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)		pause time (address
807F0B	PSTN dial tone continuous tone time		807F0D / 807F0E).
807F0C	PSTN dial tone permissible drop time		See Note 3 (Italy).
807F0D	PSTN wait interval (LOW)		
807F0E	PSTN wait interval (HIGH)		
807F0F	PSTN ringback tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.
807F10	PSTN ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	
807F11	PSTN detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	
807F12	PSTN detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
807F13	PSTN busy tone frequency range (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If 807F13 is FF, detection is disabled. See Note 2.
807F14	PSTN busy tone frequency range (low byte)		
807F15	Not used		Do not change the factory
807F16			settings.
807F17	PABX dial tone frequency range (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	See Note 2.
807F18	PABX dial tone frequency range (low byte)		
807F19	Not used		Do not change the factory
807F1A			settings.
807F1B	PABX dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 807F1B contains FF, the
807F1C	PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)		machine pauses for the
807F1D	PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH)		pause time (807F20 /
807F1E	PABX dial tone continuous tone time		807F21).
807F1F	PABX dial tone permissible drop time		
807F20	PABX wait interval (HIGH)		
807F21	PABX wait interval (LOW)		
807F22	PABX ringback tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.
807F23	PABX ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807F24	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone	20 ms	
807F25	detected (LOW) PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
807F26	PABX busy tone frequency range (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If this is FF, detection is disabled. See Note 2.
807F27	PABX busy tone frequency range (low byte)		See Note 2.
807F28 807F29	Not used		Do not change the factory settings.
807F2A	Busy tone ON time: range 1	20 ms	
807F2B	Busy tone OFF time: range 1	201113	
807F2C	Busy tone ON time: range 2		
807F2D	Busy tone OFF time: range 2		
807F2E	Busy tone ON time: range 3		
807F2F	Busy tone OFF time: range 3		
807F30	Busy tone ON time: range 4		
807F31	Busy tone OFF time: range 4		
807F32	Busy tone continuous tone detection time		
807F33	Busy tone signal state time tolerand required for detection (a setting of 4 OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twi Tolerance (±) Bit 1 0 0 0 75% 0 1 50% 1 0 25% 1 1 12.5%	cycles mear ce).	ns that ON-OFF-ON or 3 must always
	Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles red	quired for cac	dence detection
807F34	International dial tone frequency range (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	See Note 2.
807F35	International dial tone frequency range (low byte)		
807F36	Not used		Do not change the factory
807F37			settings

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807F38	International dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 807F38 contains FF, the machine pauses for the
807F39	International dial tone reset time (LOW)		pause time (807F3D / 807F3E).
807F3A	International dial tone reset time (HIGH)		See Note 3 (Belgium).
807F3B	International dial tone continuous tone time		
807F3C	International dial tone permissible drop time		
807F3D	International dial wait interval (HIGH)		
807F3E	International dial wait interval (LOW)		
807F3F	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH)	Hz (BCD)	See Note 2.
807F40	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW)		
807F41	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH)		
807F42	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (LOW)		
807F43	Country dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 807F43 contains FF, the
807F44	Country dial tone reset time (LOW)		machine pauses for the
807F45	Country dial tone reset time (HIGH)		pause time (807F48 / 807F49).
807F46	Country dial tone continuous tone time		
807F47	Country dial tone permissible drop time		
807F48	Country dial wait interval (LOW)		
807F49	Country dial wait interval (HIGH)		
807F4A	Time between opening or closing the Ds relay and opening the Di relay	1 ms	See Notes 4 and 7. Function 08 (parameter 11).
807F4B	Break time for pulse dialling	1 ms	See Note 4. Function 08 (parameter 12).
807F4C	Make time for pulse dialling	1 ms	See Note 4. Function 08 (parameter 13).
807F4D	Time between final Di relay closure and Ds relay opening or closing	1 ms	See Notes 4 and 7. Function 08 (parameter 14).
807F4E	Minimum pause between dialled digits (pulse dial mode)	20 ms	See Note 4. Function 08 (parameter 15).
807F4F	Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel		Function 08 (parameter 16). See Note 4.
807F50	DTMF tone on time	1 ms	Function 08 (parameter 17).
807F51	DTMF tone off time		Function 08 (parameter 18).

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807F52	Tone attenuation value in DTMF signals	-dBm x 0.5	Function 08 (parameter 19). See Note 6.
807F53	Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals	-Nx0.5 (dB)	Function 08 (parameter 20). See Note 6.
807F54	PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-dBm x 0.5	Function 08 (parameter 21). See Note 6.
807F55 to 807F58	Not used		Do not change the settings.
807F59	Grounding time (ground start mode)	20 ms	The Gs relay is closed for this interval.
807F5A	Break time (flash start mode)	1 ms	The OHDI relay is open for this interval.
807F5B	International dial access code	BCD	For a code of 100:
807F5C			807F5B - F1 807F5C - 00
807F5D	PSTN access pause time	20 ms	This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. Up to 7 of these can be input. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 807F4F is used.
807F5E	Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags	Bit 7 Bit 6 I 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 Bits 2, 0-	Bit 5 dBm 0 -25.0 1 -35.0 0 -30.0 0 -40.0 0 -49.0 See Note 3.
807F5F	Polarity detection		nable: Tx Polarity detection nable: Rx Polarity detection
807F60 to 807F64	Not used		Do not change the settings.
807F65	Intercity dial prefix (HIGH)	BCD	For a code of 0:
807F66	Intercity dial prefix (LOW)	BCD	807F65 - FF 807F66 - F0
807F67 to 807F71	Not used		Do not change the settings.

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807F72	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, upper limit	1000/ N (Hz).	Function 08 (parameter 02).
807F73	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit		Function 08 (parameter 03).
807F74	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit		Function 08 (parameter 04).
807F75	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit		Function 08 (parameter 05).
807F76	Number or rings until a call is detected	1	Function 08 (parameter 06).
807F77	Minimum required length of the first ring	20 ms	See Note 5. Function 09 (parameter 07).
807F78	Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings	20 ms	Function 08 (parameter 08).
807F79	Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW)	20 ms	Function 08 (parameter 09).
807F7A	Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH)		Function 08 (parameter 10).
807F7B to 807F80	Not used		Do not change the settings.
807F81	Interval between dialing the last digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode.	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
807F82	Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook determined Bit 1 0 Setting 0 0 200 ms 0 1 800 ms Other Not used Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook determined Bits 2 and 3 - Betting 0 0 200 ms 0 1 800 ms Other Not used Bits 4 to 7 - Not used		
807FA1	Acceptable CED detection range	BCD (Hz)	See Note 2.
807FA2	(high byte) Acceptable CED detection range (low byte)		
807FA3 807FA4	Not used		Do not change the factory setting.
807FA5	CED detection time	20 ms ± 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
807FA6	Not used		Do not change the factory
807FA7			setting.
807FA8			
807FA9			
807FAA	CNG detection time	20 ms ± 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
807FAB	CNG on time	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
807FAC	CNG off time	20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
807FAD	Number of CNG cycles required for detection		The data is coded in the same way as address 807F33. Factory setting: 23(H)
807FAE	Not used		Do not change the settings.
807FAF			
807FB0			
807FB1			
807FB2			
807FB3	Detection time for 800 Hz Al short protocol tone	20 ms	Factory setting: 360 ms
807FB4	PSTN: Tx level from the modem	- dBm	Function 08 (parameter 01).
807FB5	PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N _{807FB4}	- 0.5N _{807FB5} (dB)
807FB6	PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N _{807FB4}	- 0.5N _{807FB6} (dB)
807FB7	PABX: Tx level from the modem	- dBm	
807FB8	PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N _{807FB7}	- 0.5N _{807FB8} (dB)
807FB9	PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level	- N _{807FB7}	- 0.5N _{807FB9} (dB)
807FBA to 807FBC	Not used		Do not change the settings.
807FBD	Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level)	-37-0.5N (dBm)	
807FDA	T.30 T1 timer	1 s	

Notes

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.



- 2. Tone frequencies are stored as look-up tables in hex code. For each parameter, there is a look-up table for each country that uses it. The tables are given following this page. For each parameter, do not input a RAM value that is not included in the table. FF(H) = disabled.
- 3. Italy and Belgium only

RAM address 807F5E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

Bit 2 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

Bit 1 Not used

Bit 0 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

807F08 (if bit 0 = 1) or 807F38 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 807F33.

807F0B (if bit 0 = 1) or 807F3B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

807F0C (if bit 0 = 1) or 807F3C(if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

- 4. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 807F4A to 807F4F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.
- 5. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.
- 6. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10. The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are: High frequency tone: - 0.5 x N807F52/807F54 dBm Low frequency tone: - 0.5 x (N807F52/807F54 + N807F53) dBm Note: N807F52, for example, means the value stored in address 807F52(H)
- 807F4A: Europe Between Ds opening and Di opening, France Between Ds closing and Di opening
 807F4D: Europe Between Ds closing and Di closing, France Between Ds opening and Di closing

Tone Detection Frequency Ranges

- PSTN Dial Tone (807F04 - 807F05) -

France		Germany		Italy	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
040	415 - 465	060	400 - 480	030 (Default)	410 - 440
050	410 - 470	070	390 - 485	040	400 - 450
060 (Default)	400 - 475	080	385 - 490	050	395 - 455
070	395 - 480	090 (Default)	380 - 495	060	385 - 460
080	390 - 485	0A0	370 - 500	070	380 - 465
090	380 - 490	0B0	365 - 505	080	375 - 470
0A0	375 - 495	0C0	360 - 510	090	365 - 475
0B0	465 - 500	0D0	350 - 515		
		0E0	345 - 520		

Austria, Belgium		Denmark		Finland	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
0A8	380 - 505	0B0	360 - 505	0C8	340 - 520
0B8	370 - 515	0C0	350 - 515	0D8	330 - 525
0C8 (Default)	365 - 520	0D0 (Default)	340 - 520	0E8	325 - 535
0D8	355 - 530	0E0	335 - 525	0F8 (Default)	315 - 540
0E8	345 - 535	0F0	325 - 530	108	310 - 545
0F8	340 - 540	100	320 - 540	118	300 - 550
108	335 - 545	110	310 - 545	128	295 - 555
118	320 - 550	120	305 - 550	138	285 - 560
				148	275 - 565

Ireland		Norway		Sweden	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
098	255 - 425	0A0	355 - 475	070	380 - 465
0A8	245 - 430	0B0	345 - 490	080	375 - 470
0B8	235 - 440	0C0	335 - 500	090	365 - 475
0C8	225 - 445	0D0	325 - 505	0A0 (Default)	360 - 480
0D8	210 - 450	0E0 (Default)	320 - 510	0B0	355 - 485
0E8 (Default)	200 - 455	0F0	310 - 515	0C0	345 - 490
		100	305 - 520	0D0	335 - 500
		110	290 - 525	0E0	330 - 505
				0F0	320 - 510

Switzerland		Port	Portugal		and
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
0F0	385 - 560	090	315 - 440	120	290 - 580
100	380 - 565	0A0	305 - 450	130	280 - 585
110	370 - 570	0B0 (Default)	295 - 455	140 (Default)	270 - 590
120 (Default)	365 - 575	0C0	285 - 465	150	265 - 595
130	355 - 580	0D0	275 - 470	160	255 - 600
140	350 - 585	0E0	270 - 475		
150	340 - 590	0F0	260 - 480		
160	330 - 595	100	250 - 490		
170	325 - 600				

Spain		Israel		Australia	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
0B0	320 - 480	0AA	350 - 490	FFFF (Default)	Tone not detected
0C0	310 - 490	0BA (Default)	340 - 500	0C0	190 - 425
0D0	305 - 495	0CA	335 - 510	0D0	170 - 435
0E0 (Default)	295 - 500	0DA	325 - 515	0E0	160 - 440
0F0	285 - 510	0EA	320 - 520	0F0	135 - 435
100	275 - 515	0FA	310 - 525	100	130 - 430
110	265 - 520	10A	300 - 530		
120	255 - 525				
130	245 - 530				

- PABX Dial Tone (807F17 - 807F18) -

Italy		Belgium		Denmark	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
098	405 - 495	0A8	370 - 505	0B0	360 - 505
0A8	395 - 505	0B8	380 - 515	0C0	350 - 515
0B8 (Default)	375 - 515	0C8 (Default)	365 - 520	0D0 (Default)	340 - 520
0C8	370 - 520	0D8	355 - 530	0E0	335 - 525
0D8	360 - 525	0E8	345 - 535	0F0	325 - 530
0E8	355 - 530	0F8	340 - 540	100	320 - 540
0F8	345 - 540	108	335 - 545	110	310 - 545
108	340 - 545	118	320 - 550	120	305 - 550

Sweden		Switzerland		Australia	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
070	380 - 465	0F0	385 - 560	FFFF (Default)	Tone not detected
080	375 - 470	100	380 - 565	030	405 - 445
090	365 - 475	110	370 - 570	040	415 - 455
0A0 (Default)	360 - 480	120 (Default)	365 - 575	050	400 - 460
0B0	355 - 485	130	355 - 580	060	390 - 465
0C0	345 - 490	140	350 - 585	070	385 - 470
0D0	335 - 500	150	340 - 590	080	380 - 475
0E0	330 - 505	160	330 - 595	090	370 - 480
0F0	320 - 510	170	325 - 600	0A0	365 - 485

Holland		Isr	ael		
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
120	290 - 580	040	380 - 430		
130	280 - 585	050 (Default)	365 - 435		
140 (Default)	270 - 590	060	355 - 440		
150	265 - 595	070	350 - 445		
160	255 - 600	080	340 - 550		
		090	335 - 555		
		0A0	325 - 565		

- International Dial Tone (807F34 - 807F35) -

Belgium		Holland		Spain	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
08A	1110 - 1160	FFFF (Default)	Tone not detected	0C0	550 - 645
0AA (Default)	1105 - 1165	112	305 - 590	0D0	545 - 650
0CA	1100 - 1170	122	315 - 595	0E0	540 - 655
0EA	1095 - 1175	132	320 - 600	0F0	535 - 660
10A	1090 - 1180	142	300 - 605	100	525 - 665
12A	1085 - 1185	152	290 - 610	110	520 - 670
14A	1080 - 1190	162	285 - 615	120	515 - 675
		188	270 - 620	130	510 - 680
		198	260 - 625	140	505 - 685
		1A8	250 - 630		



- PSTN Busy Tone (807F13 - 807F14)

France		Germany		U. K.	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
042	415 - 465	058	400 - 480	0A0	330 - 470
052	410 - 470	068	390 - 485	0B0	320 - 460
062	400 - 475	078	385 - 490	0C0 (Default)	300 - 480
072 (Default)	395 - 480	088 (Default)	380 - 495	0D0	290 - 485
082	390 - 485	098	370 - 500	0E0	285 - 490
092	380 - 490	0A8	365 - 505	0F0	275 - 495
0A2	375 - 495	0B8	360 - 510	100	265 - 500
0B2	365 - 500	0C8	350 - 515	110	255 - 505
		0D8	345 - 520		

Italy		Austria		Belgium	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
030	410 - 440	0E0	370 - 555	042	405 - 460
040 (Default)	400 - 450	0F0	360 - 560	052 (Default)	400 - 465
050	395 - 455	100	355 - 565	062	395 - 475
060	385 - 460	110	345 - 570	072	390 - 480
070	380 - 465	120	340 - 575	082	380 - 485
080	375 - 470	130 (Default)	330 - 580	092	375 - 490
090	365 - 475	140	325 - 585	0A2	365 - 495
	·	150	315 - 590		·
		160	310 - 595		

Denmark		Ireland		Norway	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
040	395 - 450	02E	395 - 425	0A4	355 - 475
050	390 - 460	03E (Default)	385 - 435	0B4	345 - 490
060	385 - 465	04E	380 - 440	0C4	335 - 500
070 (Default)	375 - 470	05E	370 - 445	0D4	325 - 505
080	370 - 475	06E	365 - 450	0E4	320 - 510
090	365 - 480	07E	355 - 455	0F4 (Default)	310 - 515
		08E	350 - 465	104	305 - 520
				114	290 - 525

Swe	Sweden		Switzerland		and
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
030 (Default)	410 - 440	0F0	385 - 560	0F0	335 - 540
040	400 - 450	100	380 - 565	100	325 - 545
050	395 - 455	110	370 - 570	110	320 - 555
060	385 - 460	120 (Default)	365 - 575	120	310 - 560
070	380 - 465	130	355 - 580	130	300 - 565
080	375 - 470	140	350 - 585	140 (Default)	295 - 570
090	365 - 475	150	340 - 590	150	285 - 575
		160	330 - 595		
		170	325 - 600		

Spain		Israel		Australia	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
0A8	330 - 470	040	380 - 430	028	405 - 445
0B8	320 - 460	050 (Default)	365 - 435	038	415 - 455
0C8	300 - 480	060	355 - 440	048 (Default)	400 - 460
0D8 (Default)	290 - 485	070	350 - 445	058	390 - 465
0E8	285 - 490	080	340 - 450	068	385 - 470
0F8	275 - 495	090	335 - 455	078	380 - 475
108	265 - 500	0A0	325 - 465	088	370 - 480
118	255 - 505		_	098	365 - 485

Port	Portugal		Portugal			
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	
FFFF	Tone not					
(Default)	detected					
070	415 - 515					
080	410 - 520					
090	405 - 525					
0A0	395 - 530					
0B0	390 - 535					
0C0	385 - 540					
0D0	380 - 545					



- PABX Busy Tone (807F26 - 807F27)

Ita	ıly	Denr	mark	Switzerland, Israe	
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
030 (Default)	410 - 440	030	405 - 445	0F0	385 - 560
040	400 - 450	040	415 - 455	100	380 - 565
050	395 - 455	050 (Default)	400 - 460	110	370 - 570
060	385 - 460	060	390 - 465	120 (Default)	365 - 575
070	380 - 465	070	385 - 470	130	355 - 580
080	375 - 470	080	380 - 475	140	350 - 585
090	365 - 475	090	370 - 480	150	340 - 590
		0A0	365 - 485	160	330 - 595

Aust	Australia				
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
038 (Default)	395 - 450				
048	390 - 460				
058	385 - 465				
068	375 - 470				
078	370 - 475				
088	365 - 480				

- CED [2100 Hz] (807FA1 - 807FA2) -

All Areas					
RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)	RAM Value [H]	Range (Hz)
1F0	2100 ± 45				
200 (Default)	2100 ± 50				
230	2100 ± 60				
270	2100 ± 70				
2E0	2100 ± 80				
320	2100 ± 90				
380	2100 ± 100				

Default Settings

The factory settings are quoted either in hexadecimal code (the actual contents of the RAM address) if there is a H after the value in the table, or in decimal (converted from the actual hex contents of the RAM address) if there is no H after the value.

Some RAMs must be stored using BCD; see the NCU Parameter definition table for details.

Country	807F01	807F02	807F03	807F04	807F05
France	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	60H
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	90H
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	30H
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	C8H
Belgium	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	C8H
Denmark	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	D0H
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	F8H
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	E8H
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	C0H
Sweden	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	A0H
Switzerland	FFH	FFH	FFH	1H	20H
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	B0H
Holland	FFH	FFH	FFH	1H	F0H
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	E0H
Israel	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	BAH
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	FFH	1H	10H
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F06	807F07	807F08	807F09	807F0A
France	4H	00H	75	F4H	1H
Germany	4H	00H	105	CFH	3H
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	4H	00H	21H	21H	2H
Austria	4H	00H	38	F4H	1H
Belgium	4H	00H	35	20H	03H
Denmark	4H	00H	65	C2H	1H
Finland	4H	00H	125	F4H	1H
Ireland	4H	00H	105	C2H	1H
Norway	4H	00H	55	B6H	3H
Sweden	4H	00H	35	00H	1H
Switzerland	4H	00H	40	21H	2H
Portugal	4H	00H	105	C2H	1H
Holland	04H	00H	75	EEH	2H
Spain	4H	00H	75	3FH	2H
Israel	4H	00H	105	E8H	3H
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	4H	00H	150	2CH	1H
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F0B	807F0C	807F0D	807F0E	807F0F
France	50	2	0	0	FFH
Germany	105	4	200	0	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	250	0	FFH
Italy	30	50	200	0	FFH
Austria	40	4	200	0	FFH
Belgium	30	4	200	0	FFH
Denmark	65	4	200	0	FFH
Finland	205	4	200	0	FFH
Ireland	105	4	200	0	FFH
Norway	55	4	200	0	FFH
Sweden	40	3	200	0	FFH
Switzerland	40	2	200	0	5
Portugal	105	4	200	0	FFH
Holland	55	4	200	0	FFH
Spain	50	5	150	0	FFH
Israel	105	4	200	0	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	100	0	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	200	0	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	100	0	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	100	0	FFH
Australia	100	8	150	0	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	200	0	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	100	0	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	100	0	FFH

Country	807F10	807F11	807F12	807F13	807F14
France	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	52H
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	88H
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	C0H
Italy	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	30H
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	E8H
Belgium	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	52H
Denmark	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	50H
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	3EH
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	C0H
Sweden	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	32H
Switzerland	50	F4H	1H	1H	20H
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	FFH	FFH	FFH	1H	0AH
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	D8H
Israel	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	50H
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	FFH	0H	38H
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F15	807F16	807F17	807F18	807F19
France	4H	00H	2H	F0H	4H
Germany	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
UK	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	4H	00H	0H	B8H	4H
Austria	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Belgium	4H	00H	0H	C8H	4H
Denmark	4H	00H	0H	D0H	4H
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Norway	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Sweden	4H	00H	0H	A0H	4H
Switzerland	4H	00H	1H	20H	4H
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	4H	00H	1H	F0H	04H
Spain	4H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Israel	4H	00H	0H	50H	4H
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	4H	00H	0H	50H	4H
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F1B	807F1C	807F1D	807F1E	807F1F
France	100	58H	2H	50	2H
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	100	F9H	1H	9	4
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Belgium	30	150	0	30	4
Denmark	65	F4H	1H	65	4
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Sweden	40	00H	1H	40	3
Switzerland	40	EFH	1H	40	4
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	55	EEH	2H	55	4
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Israel	105	E8H	3H	105	4
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	150	2CH	1H	100	1
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F20	807F21	807F22	807F23	807F24
France	0	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Germany	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
UK	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Austria	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Belgium	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Denmark	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Finland	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Norway	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Sweden	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Switzerland	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Portugal	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Spain	150	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Israel	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
USA	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	150	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
New Zealand	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	200	0	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F26	807F27	807F28	807F29	807F2A
France	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	25
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	12
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	19
Italy	0H	30H	4H	00H	15
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	10
Belgium	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	25
Denmark	0H	50H	4H	00H	12
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	25
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	10
Sweden	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	12
Switzerland	1H	20H	4H	00H	24
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	12
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	8
Israel	0H	50H	4H	00H	12
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	0H	38H	4H	00H	12
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F2B	807F2C	807F2D	807F2E	807F2F
France	25	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Germany	12	24	24	7	24
UK	19	20	17	11	26
Italy	15	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Austria	10	15	15	20	20
Belgium	25	8	8	FFH	FFH
Denmark	12	8	23	FFH	FFH
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	25	37	37	18	18
Norway	0	25	0	FFH	FFH
Sweden	12	12	37	FFH	FFH
Switzerland	30	15	22	11	11
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	12	25	25	FFH	FFH
Spain	8	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Israel	12	24	24	FFH	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	12	25	25	FFH	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F30	807F31	807F32	807F33	807F34
France	FFH	FFH	FFH	42H	4H
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	30H	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	100	42H	FFH
Italy	FFH	FFH	FFH	40H	FFH
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	41H	FFH
Belgium	FFH	FFH	FFH	43H	00H
Denmark	FFH	FFH	FFH	42H	FFH
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	35	43H	FFH
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	40H	FFH
Sweden	FFH	FFH	FFH	42H	FFH
Switzerland	8	30	FFH	51H	FFH
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	FFH	FFH	FFH	41H	1H
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	41H	0H
Israel	FFH	FFH	FFH	41H	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	FFH	41H	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F36	807F37	807F38	807F39	807F3A
France	4H	06H	75	58H	2
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Belgium	04H	00H	42H	E8H	3H
Denmark	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Sweden	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Switzerland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	04H	00H	55	EEH	2H
Spain	4H	00H	75	80H	2H
Israel	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F3B	807F3C	807F3D	807F3E	807F3F
France	75	2	0	0	FFH
Germany	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Italy	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Austria	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Belgium	16	33	00H	00H	FFH
Denmark	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Finland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Norway	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Sweden	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	0H
Switzerland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Portugal	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Holland	55	4	00H	00H	FFH
Spain	36	5	150	0	FFH
Israel	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	FFH

Country	807F41	807F42	807F43	807F44	807F45
France	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Germany	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
UK	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Italy	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Austria	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Belgium	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Denmark	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Finland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Ireland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Norway	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Sweden	4H	00H	40	00H	1H
Switzerland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Portugal	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Holland	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Spain	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Israel	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
USA	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F46	807F47	807F48	807F49	807F4A
France	FFH	FFH	0	0	67
Germany	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	50
UK	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	252
Italy	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	58
Austria	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	53
Belgium	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Denmark	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	53
Finland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Ireland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	255
Norway	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Sweden	40	3	200	0	100
Switzerland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	60
Portugal	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Holland	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	58
Spain	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	75
Israel	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
USA	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	77
Asia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Hong Kong	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
South Africa	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Australia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	255
New Zealand	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	245
Singapore	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61
Malaysia	FFH	FFH	00H	00H	61

Country	807F4B	807F4C	807F4D	807F4E	807F4F
France	65	35	50	40	0
Germany	61	41	44	46	46
UK	66	35	44	27	33
Italy	60	40	44	40	150
Austria	62	39	50	44	46
Belgium	67	33	50	43	26
Denmark	67	33	50	26	26
Finland	60	42	50	40	60
Ireland	67	33	50	30	33
Norway	59	41	50	33	33
Sweden	60	40	70	18	26
Switzerland	60	40	60	26	00H
Portugal	66	34	50	33	33
Holland	62	40	42	33	33
Spain	60	32	75	32	100
Israel	62	39	50	46	101
USA	60	41	74	46	101
Asia	66	34	50	36	101
Hong Kong	66	34	50	36	101
South Africa	66	34	50	36	101
Australia	68	32	70	36	101
New Zealand	66	34	50	36	101
Singapore	66	34	50	36	101
Malaysia	66	34	50	36	101



Country	807F50	807F51	807F52	807F53	807F54
France	70	70	12	4	34
Germany	90	90	0CH	5	34
UK	100	100	17	4	34
Italy	70	70	11	4	34
Austria	80	80	11	4	34
Belgium	70	70	11	4	34
Denmark	90	90	17	4	34
Finland	70	75	17	4	34
Ireland	70	70	17	4	34
Norway	70	70	17	4	34
Sweden	70	70	17	4	34
Switzerland	70	70	8	4	34
Portugal	70	70	17	4	34
Holland	70	70	17	4	34
Spain	70	140	12	4	34
Israel	90	90	17	4	34
USA	100	100	14	4	34
Asia	100	110	12	4	34
Hong Kong	100	110	12	4	34
South Africa	100	110	12	4	34
Australia	100	110	14	4	34
New Zealand	100	110	17	4	34
Singapore	100	110	12	4	34
Malaysia	100	110	12	4	34

Country	807F59	807F5A	807F5B	807F5C	807F5D
France	0	0	FFH	19H	FFH
Germany	15	90	FFH	00H	FFH
UK	15	90	F0H	10H	50
Italy	15	90	FFH	00H	FFH
Austria	15	100	FFH	00H	FFH
Belgium	100	90	FFH	00H	FFH
Denmark	15	90	F0H	9H	FFH
Finland	15	90	F9H	90H	100
Ireland	15	90	FFH	16H	FFH
Norway	25	90	F0H	95H	FFH
Sweden	15	90	F0H	09H	FFH
Switzerland	10	90	FFH	00H	FFH
Portugal	15	202	FFH	00H	FFH
Holland	15	90	FFH	9H	FFH
Spain	100	90	FFH	07H	FFH
Israel	15	90	FFH	00H	FFH
USA	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Asia	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Hong Kong	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
South Africa	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Australia	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
New Zealand	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Singapore	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH
Malaysia	00H	00H	FFH	FFH	FFH

Country	807F5E	807F5F	807F65	807F66	807F72
France	80H	10H	FFH	16H	17
Germany	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	23
UK	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	20
Italy	81H	10H	FFH	FFH	18
Austria	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	13
Belgium	04H	10H	FFH	FFH	21
Denmark	80H	10H	FFH	FFH	11H
Finland	40H	10H	FFH	FFH	16
Ireland	80H	10H	FFH	FFH	36
Norway	40H	10H	FFH	FFH	16
Sweden	40H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
Switzerland	80H	10H	FFH	FFH	16
Portugal	40H	10H	FFH	FFH	1AH
Holland	00H	10H	FFH	FFH	16
Spain	80H	10H	FFH	FFH	25
Israel	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	16
USA	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	13
Asia	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
Hong Kong	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
South Africa	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
Australia	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	14
New Zealand	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
Singapore	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17
Malaysia	C0H	10H	FFH	FFH	17

Country	807F73	807F74	807F75	807F76	807F77
France	23	FFH	00H	2	15
Germany	43H	FFH	00H	1H	7
UK	84	FFH	00H	1	10
Italy	77	FFH	00H	2	10
Austria	54	FFH	00H	1	9
Belgium	72	FFH	00H	2	5
Denmark	43H	16	24	2	10
Finland	56	FFH	00H	2	25
Ireland	53H	FFH	00H	1	10
Norway	43H	FFH	00H	1	10
Sweden	43H	FFH	00H	1	5
Switzerland	43H	FFH	00H	3	1
Portugal	53H	16	24	1	0FH
Holland	52	FFH	00H	2	15
Spain	43H	FFH	00H	2	28H
Israel	43H	FFH	00H	2	14H
USA	83	FFH	00H	1	10
Asia	83	FFH	00H	1	10
Hong Kong	83	FFH	00H	1	10
South Africa	83	FFH	00H	1	10
Australia	83	FFH	00H	3	6
New Zealand	83	FFH	00H	3	10
Singapore	83	FFH	00H	1	10
Malaysia	83	FFH	00H	1	10

Country	807F78	807F79	807F7A	807F81	807F82
France	5	04H	1H	25	0
Germany	7	90H	1H	25	00H
UK	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Italy	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Austria	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Belgium	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Denmark	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Finland	25	90H	1H	25	00H
Ireland	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Norway	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Sweden	5	90H	1H	25	00H
Switzerland	1	90H	1H	25	00H
Portugal	0FH	90H	1H	25	00H
Holland	15	90H	1H	25	00H
Spain	28H	2CH	1H	25	00H
Israel	14H	90H	1H	25	00H
USA	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Asia	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Hong Kong	10	90H	1H	25	00H
South Africa	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Australia	6	90H	1H	25	00H
New Zealand	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Singapore	10	90H	1H	25	00H
Malaysia	10	90H	1H	25	00H

Country	807FA1	807FA2	807FA3	807FA4	807FA5
France	02H	00H	04H	00H	30
Germany	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
UK	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Italy	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Austria	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Belgium	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Denmark	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Finland	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Ireland	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Norway	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Sweden	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Switzerland	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Portugal	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Holland	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Spain	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Israel	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
USA	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Asia	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Hong Kong	03H	00H	04H	00H	10
South Africa	03H	00H	04H	00H	10
Australia	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
New Zealand	02H	00H	04H	00H	10
Singapore	03H	00H	04H	00H	10
Malaysia	03H	00H	04H	00H	10

Country	807FA6	807FA7	807FA8	807FA9	807FAA
France	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Germany	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
UK	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Italy	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Austria	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Belgium	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Denmark	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Finland	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Ireland	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Norway	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Sweden	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Switzerland	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Portugal	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Holland	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Spain	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Israel	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
USA	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Asia	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Hong Kong	01H	E0H	04H	00H	10
South Africa	01H	E0H	04H	00H	10
Australia	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
New Zealand	01H	60H	04H	00H	10
Singapore	01H	E0H	04H	00H	10
Malaysia	01H	E0H	04H	00H	10

Country	807FAB	807FAC	807FAD	807FAE	807FAF
France	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Germany	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
UK	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Italy	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Austria	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Belgium	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Denmark	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Finland	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Ireland	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Norway	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Sweden	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Switzerland	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Portugal	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Holland	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Spain	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Israel	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
USA	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Asia	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Hong Kong	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
South Africa	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Australia	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
New Zealand	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Singapore	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H
Malaysia	19H	96H	22H	FFH	0H

Country	807FB1	807FB2	807FB3	807FB4	807FB5
France	04H	00H	10	10	0
Germany	04H	00H	10	9	2
UK	04H	00H	10	8	00H
Italy	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Austria	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Belgium	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Denmark	04H	00H	10	9	00H
Finland	04H	00H	10	9	00H
Ireland	04H	00H	10	9	00H
Norway	04H	00H	10	10	00H
Sweden	04H	00H	10	9	00H
Switzerland	04H	00H	10	3	00H
Portugal	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Holland	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Spain	04H	00H	10	9	00H
Israel	04H	00H	10	12	00H
USA	04H	00H	10	9	0
Asia	04H	00H	10	5	00H
Hong Kong	04H	00H	10	6	0
South Africa	04H	00H	10	6	0
Australia	04H	00H	10	7	2
New Zealand	04H	00H	10	12	0
Singapore	04H	00H	10	6	0
Malaysia	04H	00H	10	6	0

Country	807FB6	807FB7	807FB8	807FB9	807FBD
France	0	10	0	0	0FH
Germany	00H	6	3	FEH	20H
UK	00H	8	2	0	0FH
Italy	00H	6	0	0	0FH
Austria	00H	6	0	0	0FH
Belgium	00H	6	0	0	0FH
Denmark	00H	10	0	0	0FH
Finland	00H	10	0	0	0FH
Ireland	00H	10	0	0	0FH
Norway	00H	9	2H	0	0FH
Sweden	00H	10	0	0	0FH
Switzerland	01H	5	1	FFH	0FH
Portugal	00H	6	0	0	0FH
Holland	00H	7	0	0	0FH
Spain	00H	10	0	0	0FH
Israel	00H	6	0	0	0FH
USA	0	9	0	0	10H
Asia	00H	6	0	0	0FH
Hong Kong	0	6	0	0	0FH
South Africa	0	6	0	0	0FH
Australia	00H	11	2	0	0FH
New Zealand	00H	8	0	0	0FH
Singapore	0	6	0	0	0FH
Malaysia	0	6	0	0	0FH

Country	807FDA			
France	53			
Germany	53			
UK	53			
Italy	53			
Austria	59			
Belgium	59			
Denmark	53			
Finland	53			
Ireland	53			
Norway	53			
Sweden	53			
Switzerland	92			
Portugal	53			
Holland	53			
Spain	80			
Israel	59			
USA	53			
Asia	47			
Hong Kong	53			
South Africa	53			
Australia	53			
New Zealand	53			
Singapore	53			
Malaysia	53		,	

4.4. DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has four bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.

The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the four bytes will be described.

4.4.1. Programming Procedure

- 1. Set bit 3 of System Bit Switch 04 to 1.
- 2. Either use Function 31 (for a Quick Dial number) or Function 32 (for a Speed Dial number)

Example: Change the Parameters in Quick Dial 10.



4. Press Quick Dial key 10.

Note: When selecting Speed Dial 10 with Function 32, press 1 0 at the ten key pad.

- 5. Press Yes four times.
- 6. The settings for byte 0 are now displayed. Press a number from 0 to 7 corresponding to the bit that you wish to change.

Example: Change bit 7 to 1: Press 7

7. To scroll through the parameter bytes, either:

Select the next byte:

or

Select the previous byte: until the correct byte is displayed. Then go back to step 6.

- 8. After the setting is changed, press Yes
- 9. To finish, press Function
- 10. After finishing, reset bit 3 of System Bit Switch 04 to 0.

4.4.2. Parameters

The initial settings of the following parameters are all FF(H) - all the parameters are disabled.

Byte 0

FUNCTION AND COMMENTS

CCITT T1 time

If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting, adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.

Range:

1 to 127 s (01h to 7Fh)

00h or FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.

Do not program a value between 80h and FEh.

Ву	Byte 1								
			FU	NCT	ION	COMMENTS			
0 to 3	Tx leve Bit 3 0 0 0 0 0 0 1	2 0 0 0 0 1 :	1 0 0 1 1 0	0 0 1 0 1 0 1	Setting (dBm) 0 -1 -2 -3 -4	If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better.			
4	Tx level setting 0: Enabled 1: Disabled (bits 0 to 4 must all be at 1 to disable)				to 4 must all be	0: When enabling the tx level setting, change this bit to 0, then change the settings of bits 0 through 3 above.1: When disabling the tx level setting, change all of the bits 0 through 4 to 1.			
5	Cable 6 Bit 6 0 0 1	9 qua Bit 0 1 0 1		Se No Lo	edium	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. • Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. • Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.			
7	Cable 6 0: Enable 1: Disale at 1 to 6	oled blec	l (bi	ts 5 t	ting to 7 must all be	 0: When enabling the cable equalizer setting, change this bit to 0, then change the settings of bits 5 and 6 above. 1: When disabling the cable equalizer setting, change all of the bits 5, 6 and 7 to 1. 			

В	Byte 2									
					FU	JNCTION	COMMENTS			
	Initia	al T	x m	ode	m ra	te	If training with a particular remote			
	Bit	3	2	1	0	Setting (bps)	terminal always takes too long, the			
		0	0	0	0	Not used	initial modem rate may be too high.			
		0	0	0	1	2,400	Reduce the initial Tx modem rate			
		0	0	1	0	4,800	using these bits.			
0		0	0	1	1	7,200				
to		0	1	0	0	9,600	Note: 12,000 and 14,400 bps speeds			
3		0	1	0	1	12,000 (reserved)	are not available with this machine.			
		0	1	1	0	14,400 (reserved)				
		1	1	1	1	Setting disabled				
		Ot	her	sett	ings	: Not used				
4	Not	use	ed				Do not change the settings.			
to										
7										

Ву	te 3			
		F	UNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not u	sed		Do not change the settings.
1	Not u	sed		
2		ISF dete Bit 2 0 1 0 1	Setting First DIS or NSF Second DIS or NSF First DIS or NSF Setting disabled	(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS.
4	Not u	sed		Do not change the settings.
5	transr 0: Mi	mit mode H only	modes available in e le compression modes	This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission.
6		during to Bit 6 0 1 0 1	ransmission Setting Disabled Enabled Disabled Setting disabled	For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the setting of (0, 0).



4.5. SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES



⚠ CAUTION

Do not change the settings which are marked as "Not used" or "Read only."

800000(H) - RAM Reset Level 1

Change the data at this address to 00 (H), then switch the machine off and on to reset all the system settings.

Caution: Before using this RAM, print the settings of all the system parameters (System Parameter List).

800001 to 800004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

800001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

800002(H) - Year (BCD)

800003(H) - Month (BCD)

800004(H) - Day (BCD)

800006 to 800016(H) - Machine's serial number (17 digits - ASCII)

800018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

800019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

80001A(H) - Boot program checksum (low)

80001B(H) - Boot program checksum (high)

80001C(H) - Main program checksum (low)

80001D(H) - Main program checksum (high)

80001E(H) - RDS program update counter (hex)

800020 to 80003F(H) - System bit switches

800040 to 80004F(H) - Scanner bit switches

800050 to 80005F(H) - Printer bit switches

800060 to 80007F(H) - Communication bit switches

800080 to 80008F(H) - G3 bit switches

8000A0(H) - User parameter switch 00

Bit 0: Stamp home position

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 and 2: Scanning contrast home position

Bit 2 1 Setting

0 0 Normal

0 1 Lighten

Darken 1 0

Bit 3: Do not adjust

Bits 4 and 5: Scanning resolution home position Setting

Bit 5 4

> 0 0 Standard

0 Detail 1

1 0 Fine

Bit 6: Transmission mode home position

0: Memory tx, 1: Immediate tx

Bit 7: Halftone home position

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

8000A1(H) - User parameter switch 01

Bits 0 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Settings return to home position after transmission

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

8000A2(H) - User parameter switch 02

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: TSI included in transmitted messages 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 4 to 7: Not used

8000A3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Memory storage report

0: Off, 1: On

Pit 3: Polling record (polling recording)

Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception)

0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions)

0: Off, 1: On

0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: TCR (Journal) 0: Off, 1: On

8000A4(H) - User parameter switch 04

Bit 0: Automatic confidential reception report output 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 1 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

8000A5(H) - User parameter switch 05

Bit 0: Substitute reception 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Memory reception if no RTI or CSI received 0: Possible, 1: Impossible

Bits 2 and 3: Not used

Bits 4: Restricted Access 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Fusing lamp control during energy saver mode

0: Lamp off, 1: Standby temperature (80 °C)

Bit 7: Not used

8000A6(H) - User parameter switch 06

Bit 0: TTI 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Closed network for transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Not used

Bit 4: Batch transmission (memory card required) 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

8000A7(H) - User parameter switch 07

Bits 0 to 7: Not used

8000A8(H) - User parameter switch 08

Bit 0 and 1: Multi-copy reception (optional memory card required)

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

- 0 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are multicopied.
- 1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are multicopied.

Bits 2 and 3: Authorized reception

Bit 3 2 Setting

X 0 Disabled

- 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.
- 1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 4 and 5: Not used

Bits 6 and 7: Forwarding (optional memory card required)

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

- 0 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are forwarded.
- 1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are forwarded.

8000A9(H) - User parameter switch 09

Bits 0 and 1: Memory lock (optional memory card required)

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

- 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified are kept in the memory until a memory lock ID is entered.
- 1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified are kept in the memory until a memory lock ID is entered.

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

8000AA(H) - User parameter switch 10

Bit 0: Reverse order printing 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Halftone type 0: Error diffusion, 1: Dither

8000AB(H) - User parameter switch 11

Bits 0 to 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Polling Standby duration 0: Once, 1: No limit

8000AC(H) - User parameter switch 12

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Toner saving mode 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 3 and 4: Printout image density (Fax mode)

Bit 4 3 Setting

0 0 Normal

0 1 Lighten

1 0 Darken

1 1 Not used

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

8000AD(H) - User parameter switch 13

Bits 0 and 1: PSTN access method from behind PABX

Bit 1 0 Setting 0 0 PSTN 0 1 Loop start 1 0 Ground start 1 1 Flash start

8000AE - 8000AF(H) - User parameter 14 to 15

Not used

8000B9(H) - User function 62 settings

Bit 0: Night timer 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: RDS operation 0: Not acceptable

1: Acceptable for the limit specified by

system switch 03

Bits 5 and 6: Not used

Bit 7: Daylight saving time 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

8000BA(H) - User function 62 settings

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Dialing type 0: Pulse dialing (10 pps), 1: Tone (DTMF) dialing

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

99

8000BB(H) - PSTN access number for loop start

Access number Hex value to program (BCD) $\begin{matrix} 0 & & F0 \\ & & & & \\ & &$

8000C8 to 8000DB(H) - RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Note 1

8000DC to 8000EF(H) - CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

99

8000F0 to 80010F(H) - TTI (Max. 32 characters - ASCII) - Note 1

800110(H) - Number of CSI characters (Hex)

Note 1: If the number of characters are less than the maxumum (20 for RTI, 32 for TTI), add a stop code (FF[H]) after the last character.

800111 to 80011F(H) - Service station's fax number (Service function 13)

800120 to 80012E(H) - Own fax number (User function 61)

80012F(H) - ID code (low - Hex)

800130(H) - ID code (high - Hex)

800131(H) - Confidential ID (low - BCD)

800132(H) - Confidential ID (high - BCD)

800133(H) - Memory lock ID (low - Hex)

800134(H) - Memory lock ID (high - Hex)

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

800140 to 800146(H) - Last power off time (Read only)

800140(H) - Year (BCD)

800141(H) - Month (BCD)

800142(H) - Day (BCD)

800143(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday,, 06: Sunday

800144(H) - Hour

800145(H) - Minute

800146(H) - Second

800150(H) - Optional equipment (Read only)

Bit 0: Memory card 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 1-3: Not used

Bit 4: 100 sheet cassette 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 5-7: Not used

800151(H) - Optional equipment (Read only)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Printer interface 0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 2-7: Not used

The following counters are listed on the System Parameter List. The names used on the report are given in brackets.

800158 to 80015A(H) - Tx counter (TX)

Address	High	Low
800158(H)	Tens digit	Unit digit
800159(H)	Thousands digit	Hundrets digit
80015A(H)	Millions digit	Ten thousands digit

Note: The following counters have the same data format as above.

80015B to 80015D(H) - Rx counter (RX)

80015E to 800160(H) - Scan counter (SCN)

800161 to 800163(H) - Print counter (PRT)

800164 to 800166(H) - Printer interface output counter (PRN)

800167 to 800169(H) - Paper feed counter: standard cassette (UPPER CASSETTE)

80016D to 80016F(H) - Paper feed counter: optional 100 sheet cassette (OPEN CASSETTE)

800170 to 800172(H) - Paper feed counter: bypass feed (BY-PASS)

800173 to 800175(H) - ADF counter (ADF)

800179 to 80017B(H) - Printer total jam counter (COPY JAM)

80017C to 80017E(H) - Paper jam counter: standard cassette (UPPER CST JAM)

800182 to 800184(H) - Paper jam counter: optional 100 sheet cassette (OPEN CST JAM)

800188 to 80018A(H) - Scanner total jam counter (DOC. JAM)

80018B to 80018D(H) - Fusing exit jam counter (EJECT JAM)

80018E to 800190(H) - Registration jam counter (PAPER JAM)

800191 to 800193(H) - PM counter (PM)

```
800194 to 800196(H) - PM call interval: default 60.000 (PM DEFAULT)
800197 to 800199(H) - Copy counter (COPY)
80019A to 80019C(H) - OPC (master drum) counter (PCU)
80019D to 80019F(H) - CTM counter (TONER)
8001D5 to 8001E4(H) - Excessive jam call parameters (Refer to section 2.3.2 for details.)
8001E5 to 8001E7(H) - OPC (master drum) replacement interval (default: 30.000 prints)
The machine asks the user to replace the drum at this interval, if bit 3 of system bit switch 04
is 0.
8001F0(H) - Number of copies in multi-sort document reception (User function 83)
8001F1 to 80021A(H) - Night timer period (User function 71)
   8001F1 to 8001F3(H) - Setting #1 for Monday
   8001F4 to 8001F6(H) - Setting #2 for Monday
   8001F7 to 8001F9(H) - Setting #1 for Tuesday
   8001FA to 8001FC(H) - Setting #2 for Tuesday
   8001FD to 8001FF(H) - Setting #1 for Wednesday
   800200 to 800202(H) - Setting #2 for Wednesday
   800203 to 800205(H) - Setting #1 for Thursday
   800206 to 800208(H) - Setting #2 for Thursday
   800209 to 80020B(H) - Setting #1 for Friday
   80020C to 80020E(H) - Setting #2 for Friday
   80020F to 800211(H) - Setting #1 for Saturday
   800212 to 800214(H) - Setting #2 for Saturday
   800215 to 800217(H) - Setting #1 for Sunday
   800218 to 80021A(H) - Setting #2 for Sunday
   Program format
   First byte - Hour (BCD)
   Second byte - Minute (BCD)
   Third byte - 00(H): Timer start time, 01(H): Timer end time
800245 to 80024C(H) - Last RDS operation (Read only)
   800245(H) - Year (BCD)
   800246(H) - Month (BCD)
   800247(H) - Day (BCD)
   800248(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, ......, 06: Sunday
   800249(H) - Hour
   80024A(H) - Minute
   80024B(H) - Second
80024D(H) - Daylight saving time setting (User function 62)
800250(H) - Transmission monitor volume
                                               00 - 07(H)
800251(H) - Reception monitor volume
                                               00 - 07(H)
800252(H) - On-hook monitor volume
                                               00 - 07(H)
800254(H) - Buzzer volume
                                               00 - 07(H)
800255(H) - Key acknowledgement tone volume 00 - 07(H)
800256 to 80025A(H) - Periodic service call parameters (Refer to section 2.3.2 for details)
800261 to 800263(H) - Effective term of automatic service calls (Refer to section 2.3.2 for de-
```

tails)

8002A5 to 8002A6(H) - Scanning top margin adjustment **8002A7 to 8002A8 (H)** - Scanning bottom margin adjustment Refer to section 5.12 for details.

80034D(H) - Print top margin (standard cassette)

800352(H) - Print top margin (optional 100 sheet cassette)

800353(H) - Print top margin (bypass feeder)

800357(H) - Print left margin (standard cassette)

80035C(H) - Print left margin (optional 100 sheet cassette)

80035D(H) - Print left margin (bypass feeder)

Refer to section 5.12 for details about these parameters.

8003C1(H) - Initial Toner Supply

Bit 3: Initial toner supply 0: Off, 1: On

Whenever the development unit is replaced, do the following procedure.

- 1. Make sure that a new development unit, drum, and CTM are correctly installed.
- 2. Turn on the machine and change this bit to 1.
- 3. Turn off the machine.
- 4. Turn on the machine. The machine starts filling up the empty development unit hopper with new toner. (This bit is reset to zero automatically.)
- 5. Make test copies or test patterns to check the print quality.

80033C(H) - Fusing unit failure details

- 01(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed above 175 °C while printing.
- 02(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not reach 150 °C before starting printing.
- 03(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp OFF was selected for power saver mode)
- 04(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (80 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 05(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed below 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (80 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 07(H) The fusing lamp temperature came below 140 °C during printing
- 08(H) The fusing lamp temperature exceeded 250 °C
- 09(H) A fusing thermistor error was detected

When a service call was caused by a fusing unit failure (codes 01 - 09):

After fixing the problem, reset the data at this address to 00(H), then restart the machine to clear the service call. (Refer to address 8003B5(H) for other hardware failures.)

80033D(H) - Excessive iam alarm

Bit 3: Scanner excessive jam alarm

1: An alarm has occurred

1: An alarm has occurred

1: An alarm has occurred

Either or both of these bits will change to 1 when an excessive jam alarm occurs. Reset each bit to 0 when you have solved the problem. The machine will not be able to detect excessive jams in future if you do not reset these bits.

8003AD(H) - Sensor status (standard cassette and internal printer mechanism)

Bit 0 to 3: Paper size sensor

(Note: Available paper sizes depend on the country for which the machine is designed.)

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit \ 0 \\ Bit \ 1 \\ Bit \ 2 \\ Bit \ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} Cassette \\ not \ installed \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A5 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A5 \\ lengthwise \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} LT \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ lengthwise \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A4 \\ lengthwise \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Bit 4: Paper end sensor

Bit 5: Registration sensor

Bit 6: Fusing exit sensor

Bit 7: Standard cassette availability

1: Paper end

1: Paper present

1: Paper present

0: Available, 1: Not available

(1: Jam, paper end, etc.)

8003B2(H) - Sensor status (optional 100 sheet cassette)

Bit 0 to 3: Paper size sensor

(Note: Available paper sizes depend on the country for which the machine is designed.)

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit \ 0 \\ Bit \ 1 \\ Bit \ 2 \\ Bit \ 3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} Cassette \\ not \ installed \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A5 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A5 \\ lengthwise \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} LT \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ lengthwise \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{array}{c} A4 \\ lengthwise \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{array}$$

Bit 4: Paper end sensor

Bit 5: Not used Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Cassette availability

1: Paper end

0: Available, 1: Not available (1: Jam, paper end, etc.)

8003B3(H) - Sensor status (bypass feed)

Bit 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Paper in the bypass feed 1: Paper not present Bit 5: Bypass feed sensor 1: Paper present

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Bypass feed availability 0: Available, 1: Not available (1: Jam, no paper, etc.)

8003B5(H) - Details of the service call (hardware error)

- 01(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed above 175 °C while printing.
- 02(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not reach 150 °C before starting printing.
- 03(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp OFF was selected for power saver mode)
- 04(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (80 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 05(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed below 80 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (80 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 07(H) The fusing lamp temperature came below 140 °C while printing
- 08(H) The fusing lamp temperature exceeded 250 °C
- 09(H) A fusing thermistor error was detected
- 11(H) Charge leak current was detected while the charge corona unit was activated
- 12(H) Charge leak current was detected while the charge corona unit was not activated
- 21(H) The laser synchronization signal was not detected during printing
- 31(H) Polygonal mirror motor startup error
- 32(H) Polygonal mirror motor error during printing
- 41(H) Main motor startup error
- 42(H) Main motor error during printing

When a service call was caused by a fusing lamp failure (codes 01 - 09):

The same code is stored at address 80033C(H).

After fixing the problem, reset the data at address 80033C(H) to 00(H), then restart the machine to clear the service call.

When a service call was caused by another hardware failure (codes 11 - 42):

If the problem remains after restarting the machine (power off/on), fix the hardware problem. The service call condition is cleared after power up.

8003FD to 800404 (H) - Scanner Video Processing Parameters

		Bit no.	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Mode	Resolution	Address		The functions of each bit are described below this table.						
	Standard (Memory tx)	8003FD(H)		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Text	Standard (Immediate tx)	8003FE(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Detail	8003FF(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Fine	800400(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Halftone	Standard (Memory tx)	800401(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Standard (Immediate tx)	800402(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Detail	800403(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Fine	800404(H)	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit 0: Edge detection 1: On

Bit 1: Not used; do not adjust the factory setting

Bit 2: Threshold value for edge detection 0: Normal, 1: High Bit 3: Background detection threshold 0: Low, 1: High

Bit 4: Not used; do not adjust the factory setting

Bit 5: MTF algorithm 0: Low, 1: High

Bit 6: Not used; do not adjust the factory setting

Bit 7: MTF 0: Off, 1: On

803382 to 803502(H) - Latest 64 error codes (Read only)

One error record consists of 6 bytes of data.

First error record start address - 803382(H) Second error record start address - 803388(H)

Third error record start address - 80338E(H)

: : :

64th error record start address - 80349D(H)

The format is as follows:

1st byte - Minute (BCD)

2nd byte - Hour (BCD)

3rd byte - Day (BCD)

4th byte - Month (BCD)

5th byte - Error code (low) [If the error code is 1-23, 23 is stored here.]

6th byte - Error code (high) [If the error code is 1-23, 01 is stored here.]

803B88 to 803D9A(H) - Latest 10 error communication records

One error communication record consists of 53 bytes. The format is as follows:

1st byte - Header

Bit 0: Communication result 0: OK, 1: NG Bit 1: Document jam 1: Occurred

Bits 2 - 3: Not used

Bit 4: Technical data printout instead of personal codes 0: No, 1: Yes

Bit 5: Type of technical data 0: Rx level, 1: Measure of error rate

Bit 6: Error report 0: Not printed, 1: Printed Bit 7: Data validity 0: Not valid, 1: Valid

2nd to 5th bytes - Date and time when the communication started

2nd byte - Month (BCD) 3rd byte - Day (BCD) 4th byte - Hour (BCD) 5th byte - Minute (BCD)

6th and 7th bytes - Communication time

6th byte - Minutes (BCD) 7th byte - Seconds (BCD)

8th byte - Number of pages transmitted or received (Hex)

9th and 10th bytes - Personal code or number of total/burst error lines If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 0:

9th byte - Personal code (low - BCD) 10th byte - Personal code (high - BCD)

If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 1:

9th byte - Number of total error lines (Hex) 10th byte - Number of burst error lines (Hex)

11th byte - File number (low - Hex) 12th byte - File number (high - Hex)

13th and 14th bytes - Rx level or measure of error rate

If bit 5 of the 1st byte is 0:

13th byte - Rx level (low - Hex) 14th byte - Rx level (high - Hex)

If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 1:

13th byte - Measure of error rate (low - Hex) 14th byte - Measure of error rate (high - Hex)

15th byte - Final modem rate

Bits 0 to 2: Final modem speed

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit \ 0 \\ Bit \ 1 \\ Bit \ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : 2.4k \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : 4.8k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : 7.2k \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} : 9.6k \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} : 12.0k \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} : 14.4k$$

Bit 3: Not used

Bits 4 to 6: Final modem type

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit \ 4 \\ Bit \ 5 \\ Bit \ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : V.27ter \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : V.29 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : V.33$$

Bit 7: Not used

SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

16th byte to 35th byte - Remote terminal's ID (RTI, TSI or CSI) (ASCII)

36th byte - Communication mode #1

Bits 0 - 1: Resolution used

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit\ 0 \\ Bit\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
: Standard $\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$: Detail, $\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$: Fine

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: ECM 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 7: Communication mode used

$$\begin{pmatrix} Bit \ 4 \\ Bit \ 5 \\ Bit \ 6 \\ Bit \ 7 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : Normal \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : Confidential \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : Polling \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} : Transfer$$

$$\begin{pmatrix}
Bit & 4 \\
Bit & 5 \\
Bit & 6 \\
Bit & 7
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}
0 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0
\end{pmatrix} : Forwarding \begin{pmatrix}
1 \\
0 \\
1 \\
0
\end{pmatrix} : Automatic Service Call$$

37th byte - Communication mode #2

Bit 0: Tx or Rx 0: Tx, 1: Rx

Bit 1: Reduction in Tx 0: Not reduced, 1: Reduced

Bit 2: Batch transmission

0: Not used, 1: Used

Bit 3: Send later transmission

0: Not used, 1: Used

O: Not used, 1: Used

O: ADF, 1: Memory

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

38th byte - Number of errors duing communication (Hex)

39th to 41st byte - 1st error code and page number where the error occurred

39th byte - Page number where the error occurred (Hex)

40th byte - Error code (low - BCD) 41st byte - Error code (high - BCD)

42th to 44th byte - 2nd error code and page number where the error occurred 45th to 47th byte - 3rd error code and page number where the error occurred 48th to 50th byte - 4th error code and page number where the error occurred 51tst to 53rd byte - 5th error code and page number where the error occurred

F80006 to F8000E(H) - ROM part number and suffix (ASCII)

4.6. SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

• Flash/SRAM data copy harness (P/N: H5159100)

4.7. PM TABLE

Scanner

Item	30K	60K	90K	1 year	Notes
Exposure Glass	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	Soft cloth and water
R1 and R2 Rollers	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	Soft cloth and water
White Plate	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	C (user)	Soft cloth and water
ADF Roller Assy	R (user)	R (user)	R (user)	C (user)	Soft cloth and water
Separation Pad	R (user)	R (user)	R (user)	C (user)	Soft cloth and water

Printer



Item	30K	60K	90K	1 year	Notes
Paper Feed Roller				С	Soft cloth and water
Registration Roller		C (user)		С	Soft cloth and water
Thermistor		R			
Hot Roller Strippers		R			
Hot Roller		R			
Pressure Roller (Fusing)		R			
Cleaning Pad	leaning Pad R (user)			A cleaning pad is	
	Replaced when a new CTM (toner cassette)				enclosed in the
	is installed.				CTM.
Transfer Roller	Transfer Roller R (С	Dry paper	
Development Unit		R			



100 Sheet Cassette (Optional)



Item	10K	30K	60K	1 year	Notes
Feed Roller				С	Soft cloth and water

C: Clean, R: Replace

5. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

∕NWARNING

The machine contains a laser beam generator. Laser beams can cause permanent eye damage. Do not open the laser unit or look along the laser beam path while the main power is on.

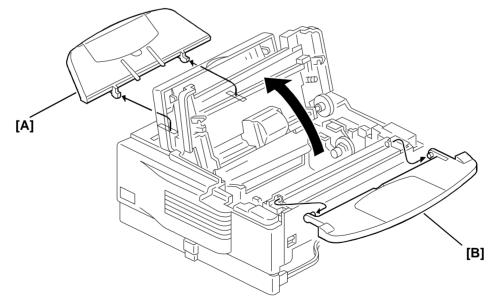
.↑CAUTION

Before starting disassembly, be sure to print all message files in the SAF memory. Then, turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord for safety.

Lithium Battery: The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard used batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

5.1. COVERS

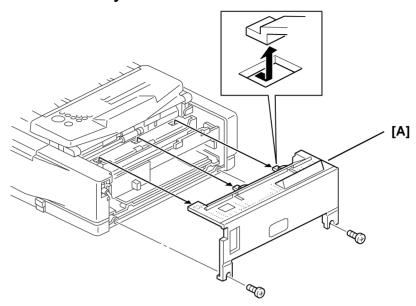
5.1.1. Document Table and Tray



H516R501.wmf

A: Document Table B: Document Tray

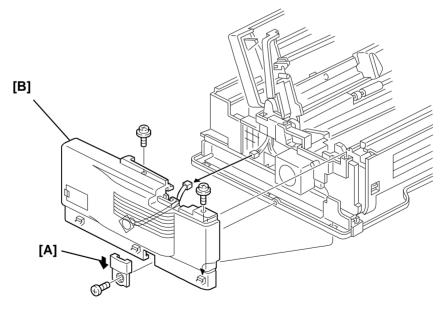
5.1.2. Rear Cover Assembly



H516R502.wmf

A: Rear Cover (2 screws, 3 hooks)

5.1.3. Left Cover

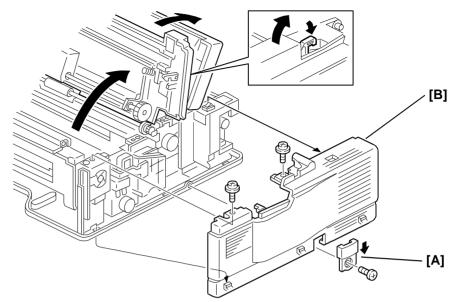


H516R503.wmf

A: Cover (1 screw)

B: Left Cover (2 screws, 3 hooks, 1 connector)

5.1.4. Right Cover

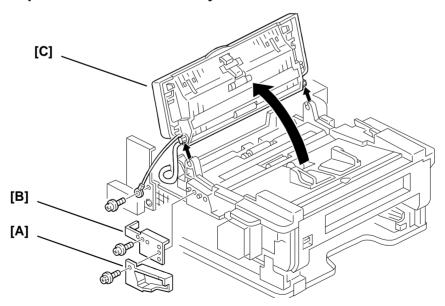


H516R504.wmf

A: Small Cover (1 screw)

B: Right Cover (2 screws, 3 hooks)

5.1.5. Operation Panel Assembly

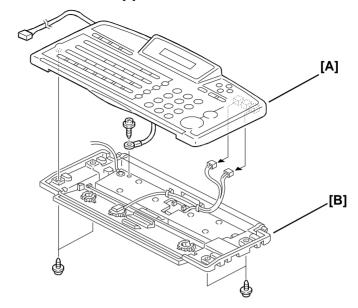


H516R505.wmf

A: Scanner Side Cover (1 screw)
B: Bracket (1 tapping screw)

C: Operation Panel Assembly (1 tapping screw with ground wire, 1 connector)

5.1.6. Operation Panel and ADF Upper Unit

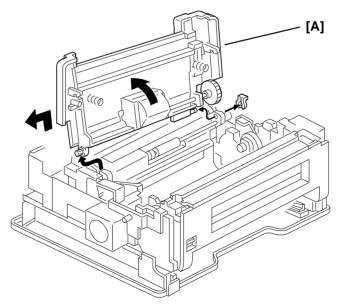


H516R506.wmf

A: Operation Panel Assembly (5 screws, 1 grounding wire, 3 connectors)

B: ADF Upper Unit

5.1.7. Top Cover

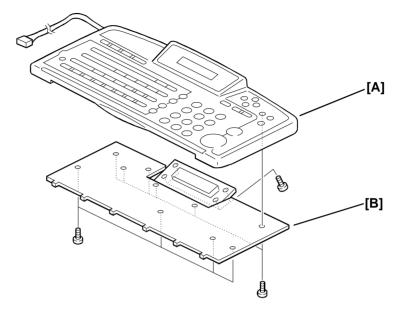


H516R507.wmf

A: Top Cover (1 white clip)

5.2. OPERATION PANEL

5.2.1. Operation Panel and OPU



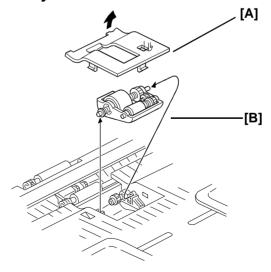
H516R508.wmf

A: Operation Panel

B: OPU

5.3. ADF

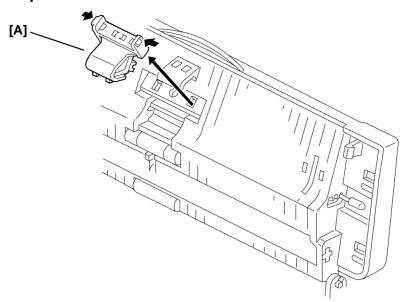
5.3.1. ADF Roller Assembly



H516R509.wmf

A: ADF Roller Cover B: ADF Roller Assembly

5.3.2. Separation Rubber Plate



H516R510.wmf

A: Separation Rubber Plate

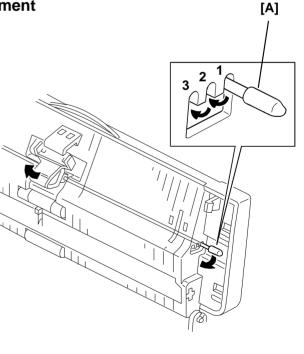
5.3.3. Separation Pressure Adjustment

To match the paper type that the user will be scanning, adjust the position of lever [A] as shown in the following table.

are renerring tables				
Paper Thickness	Pressure	Position		
Thin	Low	1		
Normal	Normal	2		
Thick	High	3		

To correct document feed problems, adjust the position of lever [A] as shown in the following table.

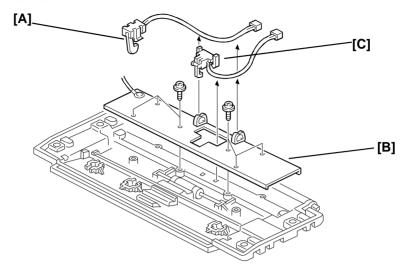
Problem	Position
Multi-feed - Thin pages	1
Multi-feed - Thick pages	3
Jam	1
Non-feed	3



H516R511.wmf

A: Separation Pressure Adjustment Lever

5.3.4. ADF Sensors



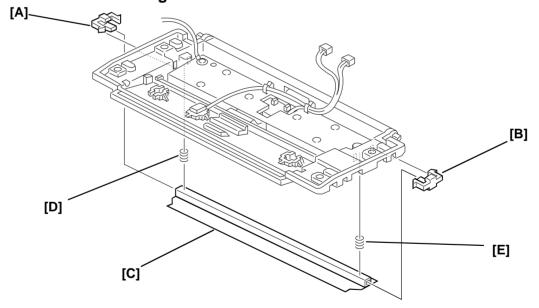
H516R512.wmf

A: Document Sensor

B: Bracket (6 tapping screws)

C: Scan Line Sensor

5.3.5. Scanner Shading Plate

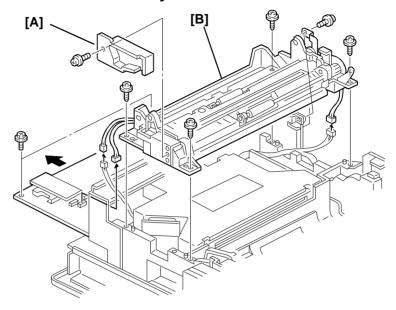


H516R513.wmf

A, B: Clips C: Shading Plate D, E: Springs

5.4. SCANNER

5.4.1. Scanner Unit Disassembly

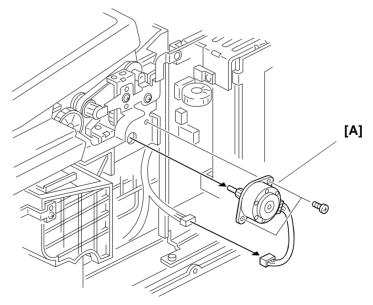


H516R514.wmf

A: Scanner Side Cover (1 screw)

B: Scanner Lower Unit (5 screws, 4 of which are tapping screws; 2 connectors)

5.4.2. Tx Motor and Drive Components



H516R515.wmf

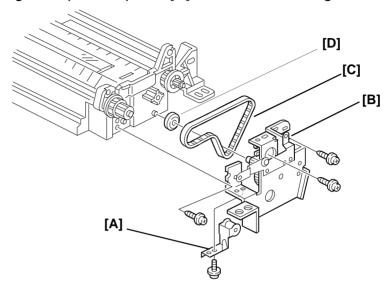
A: Tx Motor (2 screws, 1 connector)

Continued on the next page.

Drive Components

First remove the belt tensioning pulley [A], then remove the scanner drive gear train [B] and the belt [C].

Note: Do not forget the plastic spacer [D] when reassembling.



H516R516.wmf

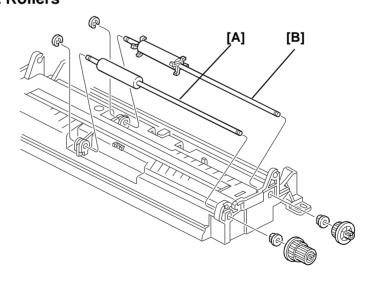
A: Belt Tensioning Pulley (1 screw)

B: Scanner Drive Gear Train (3 tapping screws)

C: Scanner Drive Belt

D: Spacer

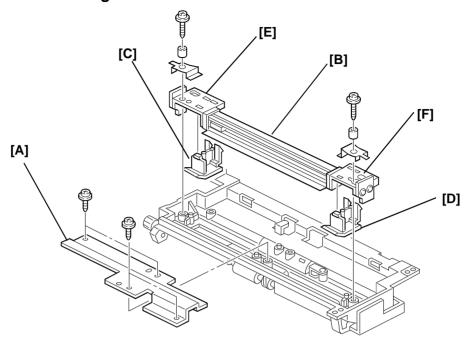
5.4.3. R1/R2 Rollers



H516R517.wmf

A: R1 Roller (1 E-ring, 1 bushing, 1 gear clipped to the shaft) B: R2 Roller (1 E-ring, 1 bushing, 1 gear clipped to the shaft)

5.4.4. Contact Image Sensor



H516R518.wmf

A: Bracket (3 tapping screws)

B: Contact Image Sensor Assembly

(1 connector, 2 tapping screws with washers, 2 spring plates)

C/D: Spacers (3 hooks each)

First remove the bracket [A], then remove the Contact Image Sensor [B].

∴CAUTION

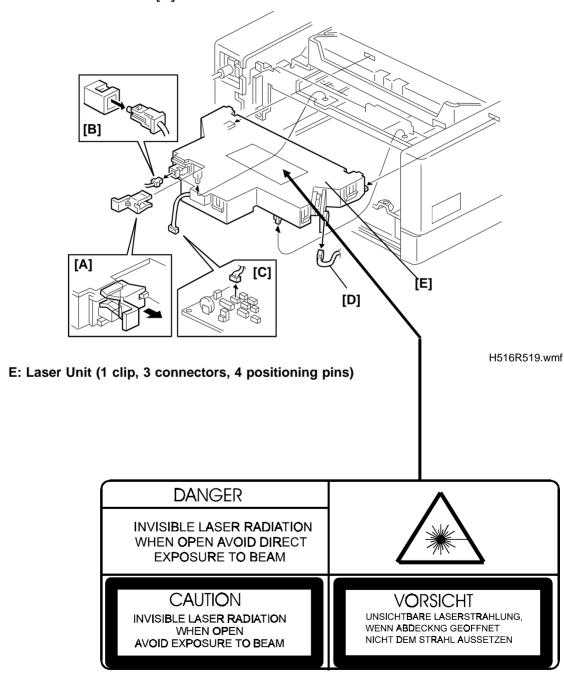
Do not remove the brackets [E] and [F].



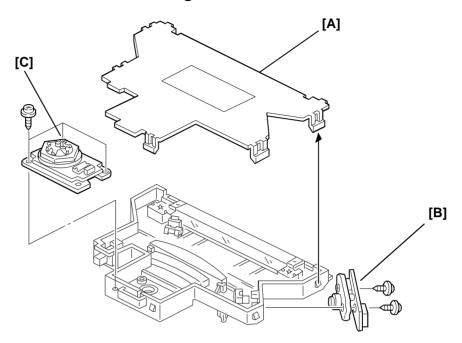
5.5. LASER PRINTING COMPONENTS

5.5.1. Laser Unit

First, remove the clip [A] and disconnect harnesses [B], [C] and [D], then remove the Laser Unit [E].



5.5.2. Laser Diode Unit and Hexagonal Mirror Motor



H516R520.wmf

A: Laser Unit Cover

B: Laser Diode (LD) Unit (2 tapping screws)

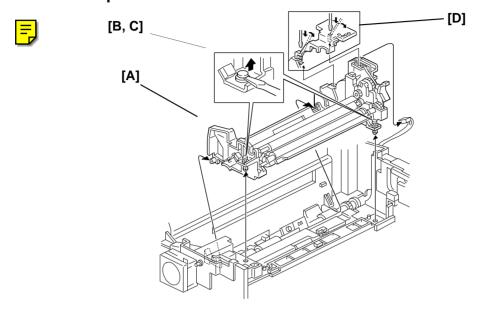
C: Hexagonal Mirror Motor (3 tapping screws)

∴WARNING

Laser beams can cause permanent eye damage. Do not open the laser unit or look along the laser beam path while the main power is on.

5.6. DEVELOPMENT

5.6.1. Development Unit

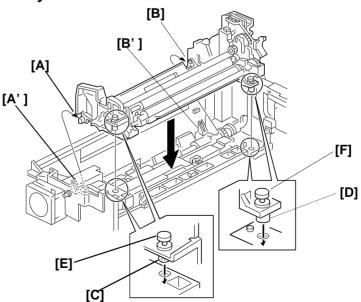


H516R521.wmf

Release the clips [B] and [C] and remove the main motor cover [D], then remove the development unit [A].

A: Development Unit (2 clips, 1 connector)

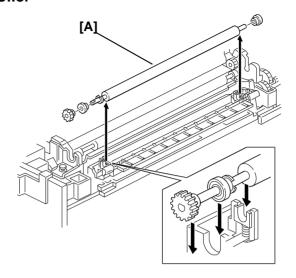
Note for disassembly



H516R555.wmf

- 1. Place the pins [A] and [B] under the hooks [A'] and [B'].
- 2. Insert the pins [C] and [D] into the openings in the base, then push [E] and [F] down to lock the development unit onto the base.

5.6.2. Transfer Roller

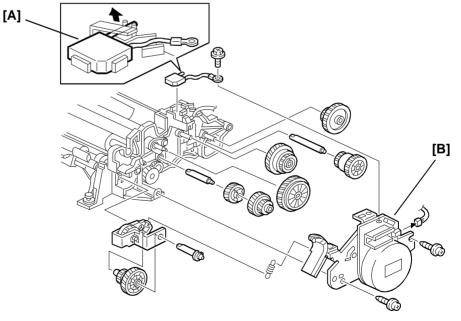


H516R522.wmf

A: Transfer Roller (1 gear, 2 spacers)

5.6.3. Main Motor and Gears

First, remove the zener diode [A], then remove the main motor assembly [B]. **Note:** Once the main motor assembly is removed, the gears and the shafts will come off the unit easily.

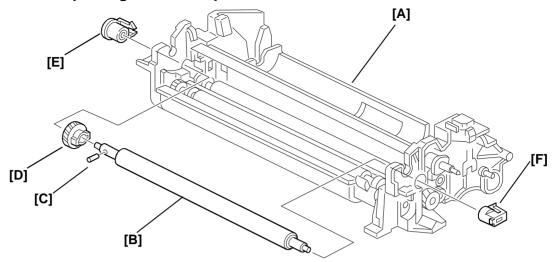


H516R523.wmf

A: Zener Diode (1 screw)

B: Main Motor Assembly (2 tapping screws, 1 connector, 1 spring)

5.6.4. Replacing the Development Unit



H516R546.wmf

A: Development Unit

B: Development Roller (Rubber)

C: Pin

D: Development Roller Gear

E, F: Bushings

After every 60,000 prints, the following parts have to be replaced.

- Development unit [A]
- Development roller [B] (A development roller comes with the parts [C] through [F]. Check for the assembly part number of [B] through [F] in the parts catalog.)
- Transfer roller (refer to section 5.6.2)
- Zener diode (refer to section 5.6.3)

A new development unit [A] does not come with the transfer roller unit, main motor and gears, development roller [B], and the parts labelled [C] to [F] in the above illustration. To install a new development unit, do the following:

- 1. Install a new development roller as shown in the above illustration.
- 2. Install a new transfer roller, a new zener diode, a main motor, and gears as described in the previous sections.

Continued on the next page

[D]

[B]

3. Check the electrical resistance of the following.

Charge bias terminals/Zener diode

H516R556.wmf

A: Bias terminal to the CTM

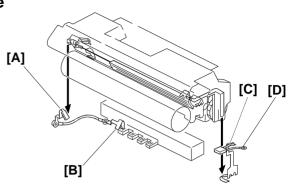
B: Bias terminal from the power pack

C, D: Zener diode terminals

Criteria

A - B: 0 Ω

C - D: The resistance varies depending on the voltage applied between terminals.



[C]

[A]

Toner application roller bias terminals

H516R557.wmf

A: Bias terminal from the power pack

B: Toner application roller shaft

C: Toner metering blade

D: Bias brush

Criteria

A - B: Less than 1 k Ω A - C: Less than 1 k Ω A - D: Less than 1 k Ω



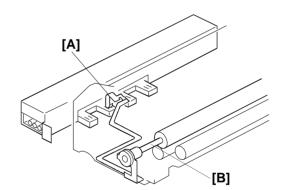
H516R558.wmf

A: Bias terminal from the power pack

B: Development roller shaft

Criteria

A - B: Less than 1 k Ω



Transfer roller bias terminals

H516R559.wmf

A: Bias terminal from the power pack

B: Transfer roller shaft

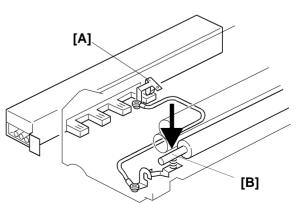
Criteria

A - B: Less than 10 $k\Omega$

Note:

Check the resistance while pushing the roller shaft down to the roller holder.

Continued on the next page



- 4. Install the new development unit into the machine.
- 5. Install the drum and CTM, and check that the following points are connected to the frame ground.
 - · Drum shaft
 - Main motor bracket
 - · Antistatic brush on the transfer roller unit

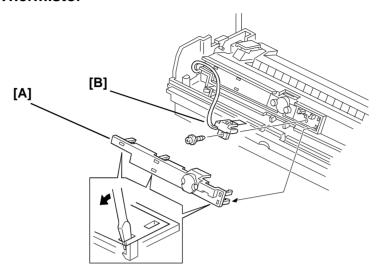
Initial Toner Supply

After installing a new development unit, do the following:

- 1. Set bit 3 of RAM address 8003C1 to 1.
- 2. Turn off the machine and wait for 10 s.
- 3. Turn on the machine.
- 4. The machine will supply new toner to the development unit.

5.7. FUSING

5.7.1. Thermistor



H516R524.wmf

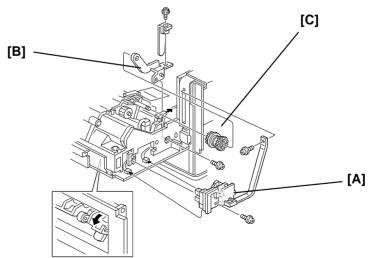
A: Thermistor Cover (6 hooks)

B: Thermistor (1 tapping screw, 1 connector)

5.7.2. Fusing Unit

Preparation - Right hand side

First, open the fusing exit cover, then remove the sensor assembly [A], bracket [B], and gear [C].



H516R525.wmf

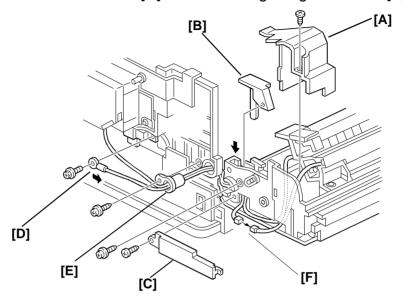
A: Feed-out Sensor/Exit Cover Switch Assembly (2 tapping screws, 2 connectors)

B: Bracket (1 screw)

C: Gear

Preparation - Left hand side

Note: Put back the bracket [D] after removing the ground wire [A].



H516R526.wmf

A: Fusing Left Cover (1 tapping screw)

B: Harness Cover A (1 tapping screw)

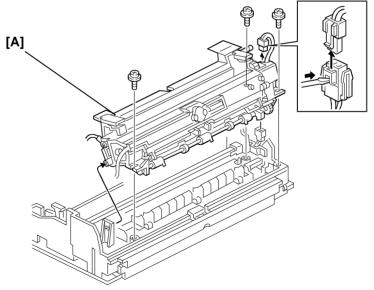
C: Harness Cover B (1 tapping screw)

D: Ground Wire (1 screw)

E: Fusing Unit Fulcrum (1 tapping screw)

F: Thermistor Harness

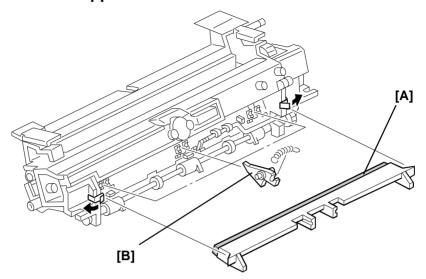
Fusing Unit Removal



A: Fusing Unit (3 screws, 1 connector)

H516R527.wmf

5.7.3. Hot Roller Strippers



H516R528.wmf

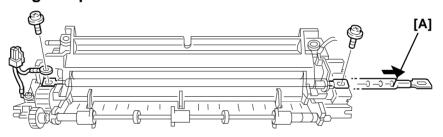
A: Cleaning Felt B: Hot Roller Strippers (1 spring each)

Remove the cleaning felt if it is still in the unit, then remove the strippers.

!CAUTION

Be careful not to lose the springs.

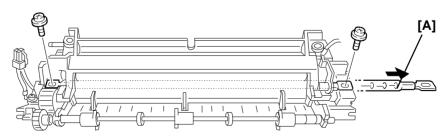
5.7.4. Fusing Lamp



H516R529.wmf

115V Models

A: Fusing Lamp (2 screws)



H516R552.wmf

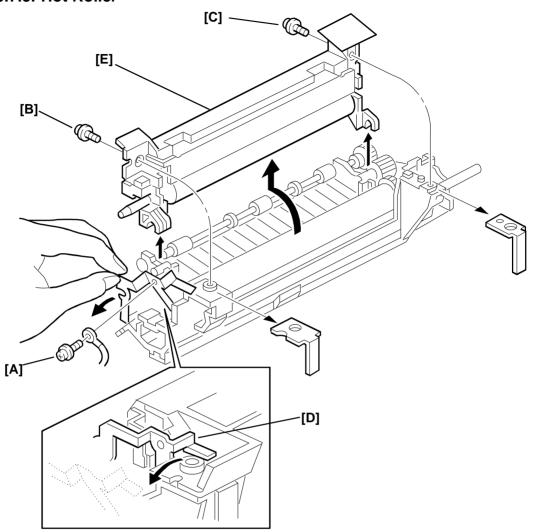
220V Models

A: Fusing Lamp (2 screws)

⚠CAUTION

Be careful not to touch the glass surface.

5.7.5. Hot Roller



H516R530.wmf

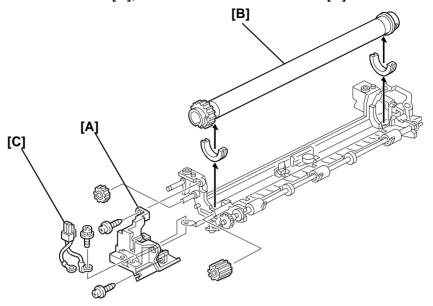
First, remove the tapping screw [A], then remove the tapping screws [B] and [C]. The fusing upper and lower units come apart after the ground plate [D] is released from the upper unit [E].

⚠CAUTION:

Do not bend the ground plate too much.

Continued on next page.

Remove the bracket [A], then remove the hot roller [B].

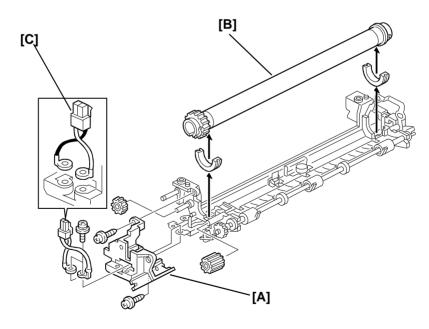


H516R531.wmf

115V Models

A: Bracket (3 screws, 2 of which are tapping screws)

B: Hot Roller C: Fusing Lamp Connector (1 screw)



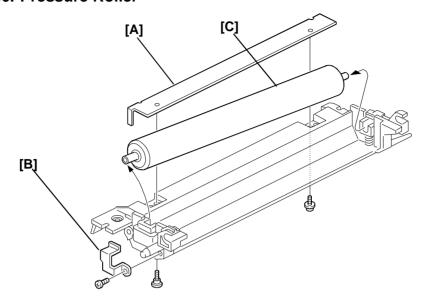
H516R553.wmf

220V Models

A: Bracket (3 screws, 2 of which are tapping screws)

B: Hot Roller

5.7.6. Pressure Roller



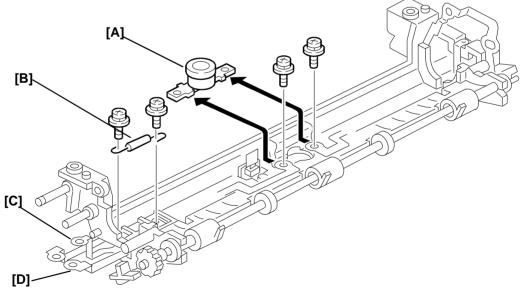
H516R532.wmf

A: Bracket (2 screws, 1 of which is a stepped screw)

B: Bracket (1 tapping screw)

C: Pressure Roller

5.7.7. Thermostat and Thermofuse



H516R554.wmf

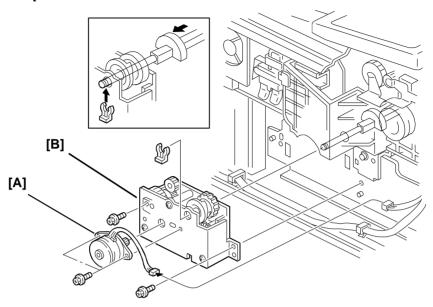
A: Thermostat (2 screws)

B: Thermofuse (2 screws) - 220V models only

C, D - Terminal Plates for the Thermfuse - 220V models only

5.8. PAPER FEED

5.8.1. Paper Feed Motor and Clutch Box



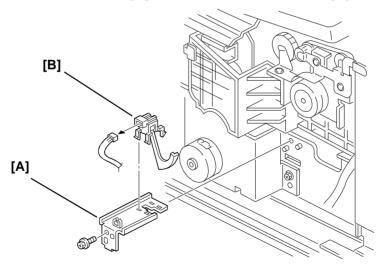
H516R534.wmf

A: Paper Feed Motor (2 screws)

B: Paper Feed Clutch Box (1 clip, 2 screws)

5.8.2. Paper End Sensor

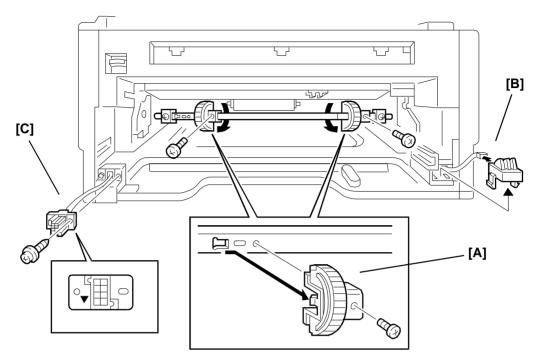
First, remove the bracket [A], then remove the sensor [B].



H516R535.wmf

A: Bracket (1 screw)
B: Paper End Sensor

5.8.3. Paper Feed Rollers, Paper Size Sensor, and Relay Connector



H516R536.wmf

A: Feed rollers (1 screw each)

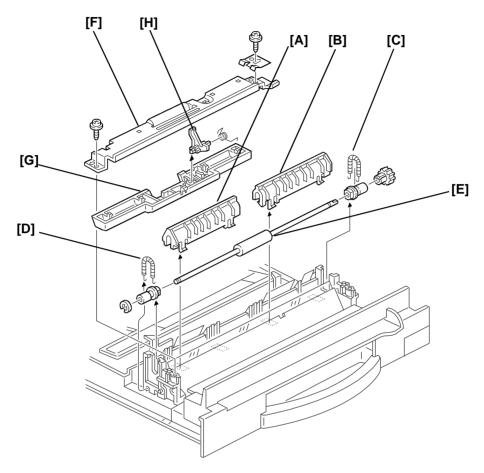
B: Paper size sensor (2 hooks, 1 connector)

C: Relay connector to the optional 100 sheet cassette (1 screw, 1 connector)

Paper feed rollers [A]: Turn the roller shaft as shown in the diagram, so that the screw heads can seen from the front. Then remove the rollers.

The relay connector to the optional 100 sheet cassette [C] should be installed as shown in the diagram (the triangle mark has to be at the left hand side of the connector.

5.8.4. Registration Roller and Bypass Feed Sensor



H516R537.wmf

A: Paper guide A (4 hooks)

B: Paper guide B (4 hooks)

C, D: Springs

E: Registration roller (1 E-ring, 1 gear)

F: Bracket (2 tapping screws)

G: Guide plate (5 hooks)

H: Bypass feed sensor actuator (2 hooks)

Registration Roller

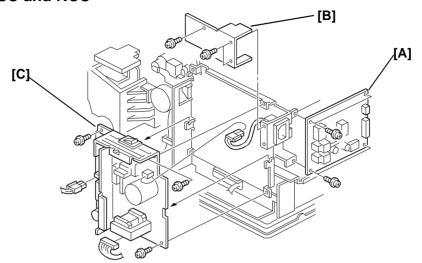
Remove the guides ([A], [B]) and springs ([C], [D]) first, then remove the roller [E].

Bypass Feed Sensor

Remove the bracket [F] and the guide plate [G], then remove the sensor [H].

5.9. PCBs

5.9.1. PSU and NCU



H516R538.wmf

A: NCU (3 screws)

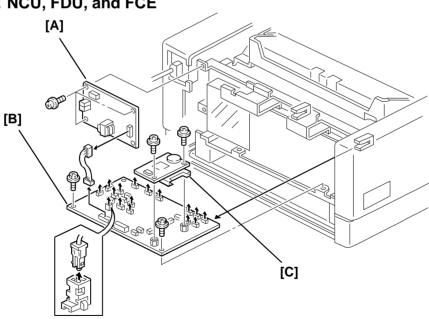
B: PSU Cover (3 screws)

C: PSU (3 screws, 3 connectors)

5.9.2. NCU, FDU, and FCE







H516R539.wmf

A: NCU (3 screws)

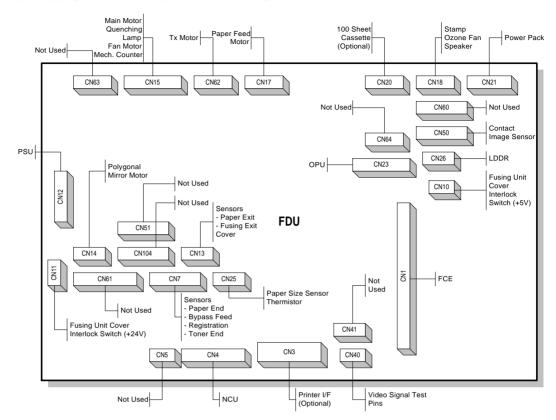
B: FDU (2 screws)

C: FCE (2 screws)

After installing the new FCE, transfer the RAM data from the old FCE using service function 12 (refer to section 4.1.22).

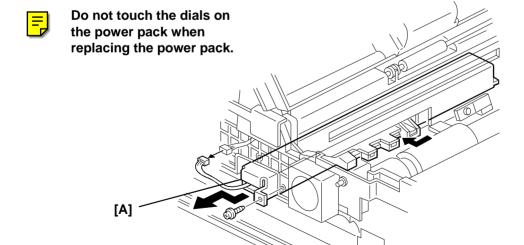
Note: The NCU should be removed first.

Harness Connections from the FDU



H516R545.wmf

5.9.3. Power Pack

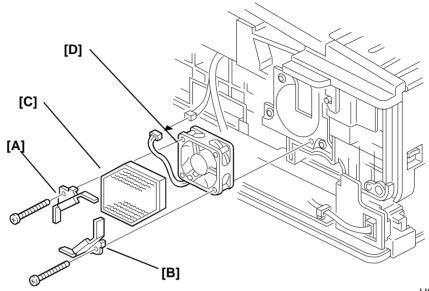


H516R540.wmf

A: Power Pack (1 tapping screw, 1 connector)

5.10. OTHERS

5.10.1. Ozone Filter and Fan Motor



H516R541.wmf

A, B: Ozone Filter Holder (2 screws)

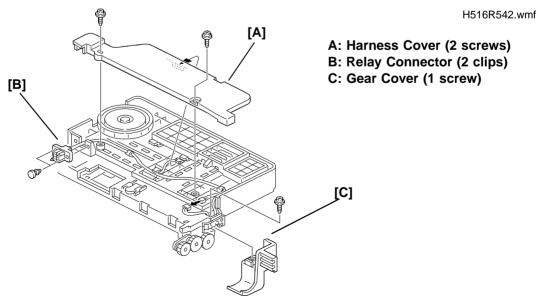
C: Ozone Filter

D: Fan Motor (1 connector)

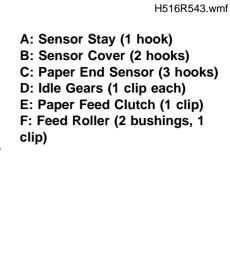
Remove the bracket [A], then the ozone filter [B] and the fan motor [C] can be removed.

5.11. 100 SHEET PAPER CASSETTE (OPTIONAL)

5.11.1. Relay Connector and Gear Cover



5.11.2. Paper End Sensor and Drive Components



Paper End Sensor

[B]

[C]

[E]

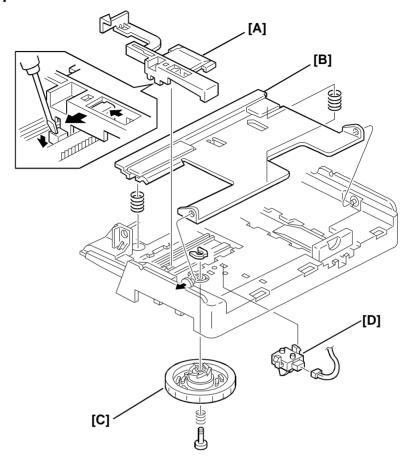
First, remove the stay [A] and the cover [B], then remove the sensor [C].

[F]

Paper Feed Clutch and Rollers

First, remove the gears [D], then remove the clutch [E] and roller [F].

5.11.3. Paper Size Sensor



H516R544.wmf

A: Paper Guide

B: Bottom Plate (2 springs)

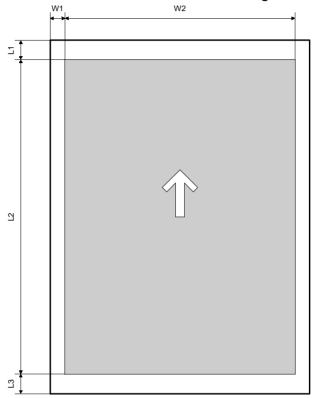
C: Paper Size Indicator (1 clip, 1 spring)

D: Paper Size Sensor (2 hooks)

5.12. IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

5.12.1. Overview

This section explains how to adjust various scanning and printing parameters. Among these are the margin parameters shown in the diagram below, which are named in accordance with the table below the diagram.



H516R550.wmf

Parameters	Description	Adjustable by			
raiailleteis		Fax - Tx	Fax - Rx	Copying	
W1	Left margin	Not adjustable	Printer	Printer	
W2	Print/Scan width	Not adjustable	Not adjustable	Not adjustable	
L1	Top margin	Scanner	Printer	Scanner/Printer	
L2	Print/Scan length	Not adjustable	Not adjustable	Not adjustable	
L3	Bottom margin	Scanner	Not adjustable	Scanner	

⚠CAUTION

The factory settings may not be the same as the "Initial settings" described in the following procedures. The RAM reset level 0 will reset all the scan and print margin parameters to the "Initial settings."

5.12.2. Scanner Parameters

1. Contrast

	Text Mode		Halftone Mode	
	Bit Switch	Initial Setting	Bit Switch	Initial Setting
Normal	Scanner 02	08(H)	Scanner 05	07(H)
Lighten	Scanner 03	0B(H)	Scanner 06	08(H)
Darken	Scanner 04	06(H)	Scanner 07	06(H)

2. Margins

Parameter	Formula	RAM Address	Unit	Initial Setting
W1, W2	Not adjustable			
L1	This parameter changes the number of tx motor steps after the scan line sensor is activated. To increase the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting + 7.7x To decrease the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting - 7.7x Initial setting of L1: 2 mm	8002A5(H) (low) 8002A6(H) (high)	1/7.7 mm	81(H) [129(D)]
L2	Not adjustable (Original length - L1 - L3)			
L3	This parameter changes the number of tx motor steps after the scan line sensor is deactivated. To increase the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting - 7.7x To decrease the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting + 7.7x Initial setting of L3: 2 mm	8002A7(H) (low) 8002A8(H) (high)	1/7.7 mm	4D(H) [77(D)]

5.12.3. Printer Parameters

1. Margins (Main Scan Direction)

Parameter	Formula	RAM Address	Unit	Initial Setting
W1	1. Fax and Copy Mode To increase the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting + x/0.5 To decrease the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting - x/0.5 Initial setting of W1: 2 mm	Standard cassette: 800357(H) 100 sheet cassette: 80035C(H) Bypass feed: 80035D(H)	0.5 mm	0A(H)
W2	Not adjustable			

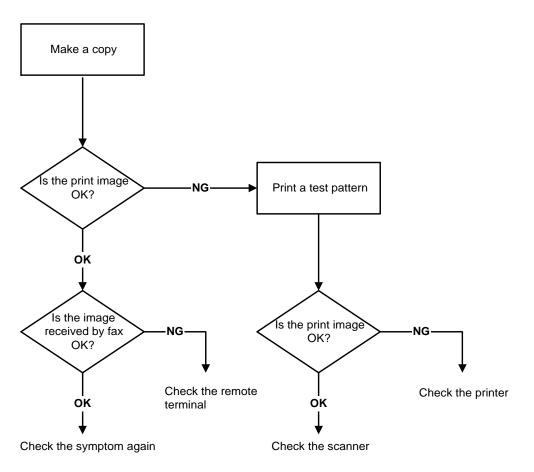
2. Margins (Sub Scan Direction)

Parameter	Formula	RAM Address	Unit	Initial Setting
L1	To increase the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting + x/0.66 To decrease the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting - x/0.66 Initial setting of L1: 2 mm	Standard cassette: 80034D(H) 100 sheet cassette: 800352(H) Bypass feeder: 800353(H)	0.66 mm	00(H) 07(H)
L2	Not adjustable			
L3	This is only adjustable in bypass feed mode. To increase the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting - x/0.338 To decrease the margin by x mm: New setting = Current setting + x/0.338 Example: To increase the margin by 5 mm. $5/0.338 \approx 14.8 \approx 15(D) = F(H)$ New setting = $3B - F = 2C(H)$	800363(H)	0.338 mm	3B(H)

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

6.1. COPY QUALITY TROUBLESHOOTING

If there is a copy quality problem that cannot be solved easily, try using the following troubleshooting procedures, while referring to the point-to-point diagram. The procedures may not be exhaustive, but they may help you to find the problem.



H516T514.wmf

First, distinguish whether the problem is caused by the remote terminal or by your machine. If the problem is caused by your machine, distinguish whether it is due to a scanner problem or a printer problem.

6.1.1. Blank Copies

Possible Cause (Printer):

- · Poor drum sensitivity.
- Laser optic components are out of position.
- The proper bias voltages are not applied to the toner application roller and/or the development roller.
- The proper current is not applied to the transfer roller.

- 1. Print a test pattern, and open the cover in the middle of printing.
- 2. Check if there is toner adhered to the drum surface. If there is, do the following. If not, go to step 3.
 - Check if the transfer roller is installed correctly or not.
 - Check if the development unit is installed correctly or not.
 - Check if the resistance between the transfer bias terminal on the development unit and the transfer roller shaft is less than 10 kOhm or not, while pushing the roller shaft down to the roller holder.
 - If the resistance is OK, check the connections behind the power pack and the power pack itself.
- 3. Check if there is toner on the surface of the development roller. If there is, do the following. If not, go to step 4.
 - Check if all the laser optic components are properly positioned.
 - Try replacing the drum.
- 4. Check if the toner cartridge is empty or not. If it is, do the following. If not, go to step 5.
 - Check or replace the toner end sensor.
- 5. Do the following.
 - Check that the development unit is correctly installed or not.
 - Check if the resistance between the development roller bias terminal on the development unit and the development roller shaft, the toner metering plate, and the bias brush are less than 1 kOhm or not.
 - Check if the resistance between the toner application roller bias terminal on the development unit and the toner application roller shaft is less than 1 kOhm or not.
 - If all the resistances are OK, check the connections behind the power pack and the power pack itself.

6.1.2. Black Copies

Possible Cause (Scanner)

• The contact image sensor is defective.

Action:

- Check the connection between the FDU (CN50) and the contact image sensor.
- 2. Replace the contact image sensor.

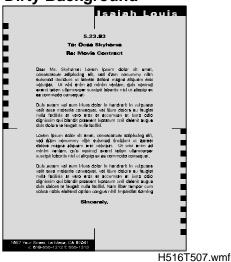
Possible Cause (Printer)

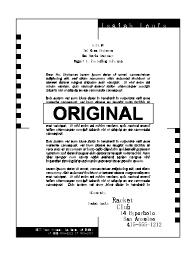
The charge is not properly applied.

- Check if all the charge bias terminals on the development unit and the CTM, and the charge wire are properly connected or not.
 - If they are, go to step 2.
 - If not, fix the connections.
- 2. Check if the zener diode is not shorted.
 - If the zener diode is shorted, replace the zener diode.
 - If not, go to step 3.
- 3. Check the connections behind the power pack.

6.1.3. Dirty Background







H516T512.wmf

Possible Cause (Scanner)

Scanner shading correction error or wrong threshold.

Action:

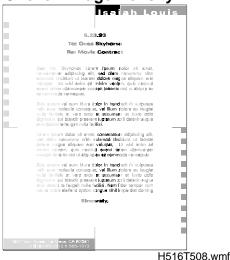
- 1. Clean the shading plate.
- 2. Adjust the scanner contrast threshold settings.

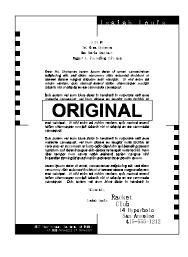
Possible Cause (Printer)

- · Poor drum sensitivity.
- The charge is not properly applied.
- The hot roller is dirty.

- 1. Try replacing the drum.
- 2. Check if the hot roller surface is dirty or not.
 - If it is, clean the roller or replace the cleaning pad.
 - If not, go to step 3.
- 3. Check if all the charge bias terminals on the development unit and the CTM, and the charge wire are properly connected or not.
 - If they are, check or replace the power pack.
 - If not, fix the connections.

6.1.4. Uneven Image Density





H516T512.wmf

Possible Cause (Scanner)

- · Dirty exposure glass
- · Partial scanner lamp defect

Action

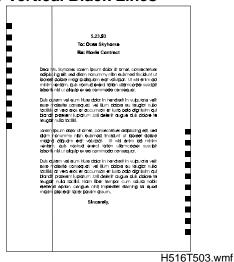
- · Clean the exposure glass of the image sensor.
- · Replace the image sensor.

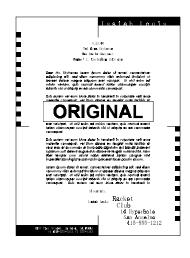
Possible Cause (Printer)

- · Poor drum sensitivity.
- · Dirty laser optic components.
- The toner metering blade is deformed, or incorrectly positioned.
- · Uneven toner supply in the development toner hopper.
- · Quenching lamp defect.

- 1. Print a solid black test pattern, and open the cover in the middle of printing.
- 2. Check if the toner is evenly distributed on the development roller.
 - If it is not, check the toner metering blade, and the toner supply mechanism in the toner hopper. If it is, go to step 3.
 - If the image is lighter in the center of the image, toner may be low. Replace the CTM and supply more toner.
- 3. Check if the toner is evenly distributed on the drum.
 - If it is not, check the drum sensitivity, the laser optic components, and the quenching lamp on the CTM.
 - If it is, check if there is any dirt on the transfer roller surface.

6.1.5. Vertical Black Lines





H516T512.wmf

Possible Cause (Scanner)

- Defective contact image sensor element(s).
- · Dirt or dust on the exposure glass.
- Dirty white plate on the ADF.

Action:

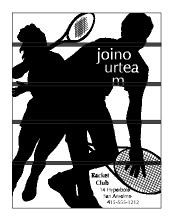
- 1. Clean the exposure glass and the shading plate.
- 2. Replace the contact image sensor.

Possible Cause (Printer)

- Damaged cleaning blade.
- Dirty hot roller stripper(s).

- 1. Replace the CTM.
- 2. Clean the hot roller strippers.

6.1.6. Horizontal Black Lines





H516T510.wmf

H516T511.wmf

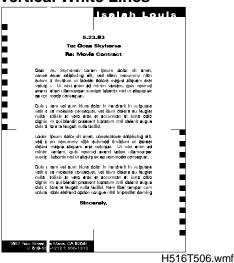
Possible Cause (Printer)

- The drum surface is scratched or damaged.
- Charge corona leak failure.

- 1. Check that the surface of the drum is not damaged.
 - Change the drum if it is damaged.
- 2. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Clean the charge wire.
 - Change the CTM.

6.1.7. Vertical White Lines







H516T512.wmf

Possible Cause (Scanner)

• Defective image sensor element(s).

Action:

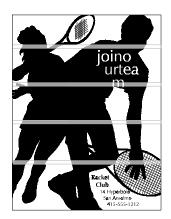
· Replace the image sensor.

Possible Cause (Printer)

- · The laser optic components are dirty.
- The hot roller stripper scrapes off toner from the print paper.

- Clean the laser optic components.
- Check the hot roller stripper mechanism. Clean the strippers and replace them if they are damaged.

6.1.8. Horizontal White Lines





H516T509.wmf

H516T511.wmf

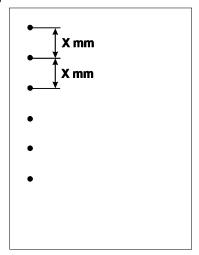
Possible Cause (Printer)

- The surface of the development roller is damaged or deformed.
- The development bias is not stable.
- Transfer current is not stable.



- 1. Print a test pattern, and open the cover in the middle of printing.
- 2. Check if horizontal white lines (where toner is not adhered) appear on the drum surface or not.
 - If they do, go to step 3.
 - If not, check the transfer roller surface and the transfer bias terminals connections. If they are OK, check or replace the power pack.
- 3. Check if horizontal white lines (where toner is not adhered) appear on the development roller surface or not.
 - If they do, check if the development roller surface is not deformed. If it is OK, check or replace the power pack.
 - If not, check for damage on the drum surface.

6.1.9. Black Dots/Spots



H516T502.wmf

Possible Cause (Scanner)

• Dust on the exposure glass.

Action:

- Clean the exposure glass.
- · Try disabling MTF.

Possible Cause (Printer)

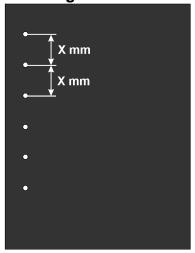
• The drum surface is damaged (this is likely if the dots appear at 94.2 mm intervals).

Action:

· Replace the drum.

6.1.10. White Spots in Black Image Areas





H516T501.wmf

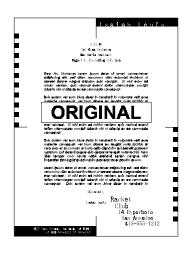
Possible Cause (Printer)

- The drum surface is damaged (this is likely if the dots appear at 94.2 mm intervals).
- The development roller surface is damaged (this is likely if the dots appear at 62.8 mm intervals).
- The toner application roller surface is damaged (this is likely if the dots appear at about 16.75 mm intervals).

- Replace the drum.
- Clean the surface of the development roller and change the roller if it is damaged.
- · Change the development unit.

6.1.11. Faint Copies





H516T512.wmf

Possible Causes (Scanner)

- Dirty shading plate and/or exposure glass
- Wrong scan threshold
- Contact image sensor (LED, sensor element) defect

Action:

- · Clean the white plate on the ADF.
- · Adjust the scan threshold settings.
- · Replace the image sensor.

Possible Causes (Printer)

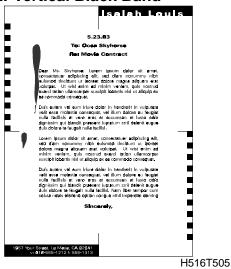
- Poor drum sensitivity.
- Dirty laser optic components.
- Incorrect development/ transfer bias
- Defective quenching lamp
- · Low toner
- · Low fusing temperature

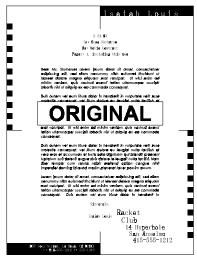
- 1. Check whether the toner saving feature has not been selected with the user parameters. (If it has been selected, there is no problem.)
- 2. Print a test pattern, and open the cover in the middle of printing.
- 3. Check if the toner on the paper at the entrance of the fusing unit looks faint or not.
 - If it does, check or replace the fusing lamp, thermistor, and PSU.
 - If it does not, go to step 4.
- 4. Check if the toner on the drum looks faint or not.
 - If it does, go to step 5.
 - If it does not, check the contacts between the transfer bias terminals and power pack.
- 5. Check if the toner on the development roller looks faint or not.
 - If it does, check all the contacts between the development and toner application rollers' bias terminals.
 - If it does not, try replacing the CTM and drum.

6.1.12. Vertical Black Band









H516T512

Possible Cause (Printer)

- · Dirty charge corona wire.
- The toner metering blade is deformed, damaged, or incorrectly positioned.

- Clean the charge corona wire. The wire cleaner is on the CTM.
- · Replace the CTM.
- Check the toner metering blade and replace if it is damaged.

6.1.13. Unfused Copies

Possible Cause (Printer)

- The thermistor is defective.
- The fusing pressure roller spring mechanism is defective.
- The wrong type of toner is being used.
- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.

Action:

- 1. Check if the correct type of paper and toner are being used.
 - If it is, go to step 2.
 - If not, use recommended types of paper and toner.
- 2. Try replacing the fusing lamp and the roller.

6.1.14. Ghost Image

Possible Cause (Printer)

- · Poor drum sensitivity.
- The cleaning blade is deformed or incorrectly positioned.
- · Dirty hot roller

- · Clean the cleaning blade.
- Replace the CTM.
- Clean the hot roller surface and/or replace the cleaning pad.
- Replace the drum.

6.1.15. Toner on the Back of the Printer Paper

Possible Cause (Printer)

- Dirty transfer roller
- · Dirty fusing pressure roller

- 1. Check if the transfer roller is dirty with toner or not.
 - If it is, clean the roller surface.
 - 1) Take the roller off the machine.
 - 2) Gently tap the roller shaft to remove the toner.
 - 3) Turn the roller against a clean sheet of paper to let the toner transfer onto the paper.
 - If not, go to step 2.
- 2. Check if the fusing pressure roller is dirty with toner or not.
 - If it is, clean the fusing pressure roller.
 - If not, check for any other dirty rollers and clean them.

6.1.16. Misaligned Output (Data shifted to the right or left)

Possible Cause (Scanner)

• Incorrect setting of the document guide.

Action:

Align each side of the document to the document guides.

Possible Cause (Printer)

- The laser optics are misaligned.
- Improper print margin setting (main scan direction).

Action:

- Adjust the main scan print margin. (Refer to Section 5-12.)
- · Check that the laser optics are aligned correctly.

6.1.17. Misaligned Output (Image shifted vertically)/Reduced Image

Possible Cause:

- Improper print margin (sub scan direction).
- Dirty registration roller.

- Adjust the sub scan print margin. (Refer to Section 5-12.)
- · Clean the registration roller.

6.2. MECHANICAL PROBLEMS

6.2.1. ADF/Scanner

1. Non Feed

Possible Cause:



- An incorrect type or size of document is used.
- · The operation panel is not properly closed.
- The pick-up and feed rollers are dirty or worn out.
- The mechanical clutch mechanism for document pick-up is defective.
- Incorrect positioning of the separation pad, or the pad is missing.
- Inappropriate separation pressure setting.
- The Tx motor is defective.

- 1. Check that a correct type of document is being used.
- 2. Check that the operation panel is securely closed.
- 3. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Clean the pick-up and feed rollers with a soft cloth and water, and replace them if they are damaged.
 - Check the spring mechanism of the pick-up roller and replace it if it is damaged.
 - Adjust the separation pressure to the appropriate setting.
 - Check the connection between the FDU (CN62) and the Tx motor.
 - Replace the Tx motor.

2. Jam

Possible Cause:



- An incorrect type or size of document is used.
- The document is too long.
- The scanner rollers (pick-up, feed, R1, and R2 rollers) are dirty.
- Obstruction in the document paper path.
- The scan line sensor is defective.
- Defective tx motor



- 1. Check that a correct type of document is being used, and that the document length is within the maximum setting.
- 2. Check for obstructions in the paper path.
- 3. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Clean the rollers with a soft cloth and water, and replace them if they are damaged.
 - Check that the scan line sensor is working correctly.
 - Replace the Tx motor.



3. Skew

Possible Cause:

- An incorrect type or size of document is used.
- The document guide is not properly set.
- The operation panel is not properly closed.
- The scanner rollers (pick-up, feed, R1, and R2 rollers) are dirty.
- Obstruction in the document paper path.
- The separation pad is out of position.

Action:

- 1. Check that a correct type of document is being used.
- Check that the operation panel is securely closed and also check that the document guide is properly set.
- 3. Check for obstructions in the paper path.
- 4. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Check that the separation pad is properly set. Replace it if it is damaged.
 - Clean the rollers with a soft cloth and water, and replace them if they are damaged.

4. Multi-feed

- · Adjust the separation pressure to the proper setting.
- · Clean or replace the separation pad.



6.2.2. Printer

1. Non-feed

Possible Cause:

- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.
- The paper cassette end fence is not properly set.
- The paper lift mechaninsm (slide lock) is not working properly.
- Malfunction in the paper feed clutch.
- The paper feed roller(s) is not properly set.
- The paper feed motor is defective.
- The registration sensor is defective.

- 1. Check that a correct type of paper is being used.
- 2. Check that the paper cassette end fence is correctly set and check the paper lift mechanism (slide lock and the springs).
- 3. Check that the feed clutch for the cassette that was used is working properly.
- 4. Check that the paper feed roller(s) is properly installed. Clean or replace if necessary.
- Check the registration roller and its mechanism. Clean or replace if necessary.
- 6. Check that the registration sensor is correctly working.
- 7. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Check the connections between the FDU (CN17) and the paper feed motor.
 - Replace the paper feed motor.





2. Paper Jam - Inside Printer

Possible Cause:

- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.
- The paper end fence and/or the paper guides in the cassette is not properly set.
- · The registraton roller is dirty.
- The registration sensor is defective.
- Obstruction in the paper path.
- The main motor is defective.

- 1. Check if a correct type of paper is being used, and check that the paper end fence and the paper guides are correctly set.
- 2. Check for obstructions in the paper path.
- Check the registration roller and its mechanism. Clean or replace if necessary.
- 4. Check that the registration sensor is working properly.
- 5. If the problem still remains, do the following.
 - Check the connections between the FDU (CN15) and the main motor.
 - Replace the main motor.
 - Check the FDU output of power and drive signals to the main motor (CN15-1, 3). If signals are not output, replace the FDU or FCE.
 - · Check the fusing unit drive mechanism. Check that all the gears are properly installed.

3. Jam - Fusing Exit

Possible Cause:

- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.
- Obstruction in the paper path.
- The registration sensor is defective.
- · Malfunction in the fusing drive mechanism.
- The paper feed out sensor is defective.
- Malfunction in the hot roller stripper(s) mechanism.
- · Malfunction in the pressure mechanism in the fusing unit.

- 1. Check if a correct type of paper is being used.
- 2. Check for obstructions in the paper path.
- 3. Check that the registration sensor is working correctly.
- 4. Check all the gears in the fusing drive mechanism.
- 5. Check that the paper feed out sensor is working correctly.
- 6. Check the hot roller strippers and the pressure mechanism in the fusing unit.

4. Skew

Possible Cause:



- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.
- Incorrect positioning of the paper guides in the paper cassette.
- · The corner separators are out of position.
- The paper feed rollers are worn out or damaged.
- Obstruction in the paper path.
- · Malfunction in the registration mechanism.

- 1. Check if a correct type of paper is being used.
- Check that the paper guides and the corner separators in the paper cassette are correctly set.
- 3. Check that the paper feed rollers are correctly installed and clean or replace them if necessary.
- 4. Check for obstructions in the paper path.
- 5. Check the registration mechanism and clean or replace the rollers if necessary.

5. Multi-feed

Possible Cause:

- A non-recommended type of paper is being used.
- Incorrect positioning of the paper guides and/or end fence in the paper cassette.

- Check if a correct type of paper is being used.
- Check that the paper guides and the end fence are correctly set.

6.3. SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

If the Call Service indicator is lit, one of the following conditions has occurred.

Symptom	Error Code	Sub-code	SC-code
Charge leak current detected while the charge corona unit was activated.	9-17	11	1-11
Charge leak current detected while the charge corona unit was not activated.	9-17	12	1-12
Laser diode failure	9-20	21	2-21
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at high temperature during printing)	9-22	01	0-01
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp not at printing temperature after warm-up)	9-22	02	0-02
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at high temperature in power saver mode)	9-22	03	0-03
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at high temperature in power saver mode)	9-22	04	0-04
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at low temperature in power saver mode)	9-22	05	0-05
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at low temperature during printing)	9-22	07	0-07
Fusing unit failure (fusing lamp at an extremely high temperature)	9-22	08	0-08
Fusing unit failure (thermistor error)	9-22	09	0-09
Hexagonal mirror motor startup error	9-23	31	3-31
Hexagonal mirror motor error while printing	9-23	32	3-32
Main motor startup error	9-24	41	4-41
Main motor error while printing	9-24	42	4-42

To find out which problem has occurred, either:

- See the Auto Service Call report that was sent to the service station by the machine. This report lists a sub-code, as well as the error message; this sub-code may help you find the problem.
 Or, check the sub-code stored at RAM addresses 80033C(H) and 8003B5(H).
- Check the error code history using service function 03.
- Try to clear the service call condition (for failures which are not related to the fusing unit): switch the power off, wait 10 seconds, then switch back on.
- An SC-code is displayed on the LCD panel when the error occurs.

If the problem remains, work through the appropriate troubleshooting procedure from the following pages.

After each troubleshooting attempt, reset the machine and try to operate it. If the machine still does not work, continue troubleshooting.

Symptom: Charger Leak (Error Code 9-17)			
This error occurs in either of t	he following conditions:		
 If FDU CN21-8 stayed low 	for 3 s or more while the charg	e corona is on (sub-code 11)	
 If FDU CN21-8 stayed low 	for 3 s or more while the charg	e corona is off (sub-code 12)	
Check	Action if Yes	Action if No	
Clean the charge corona w replace the CTM if it is broker	vire and unit. Check the if the ch า.	arge wire is cut off and	
2. If the sub-code is 11, do the	e following. If the sub-code is 12	2, go to step 5.	
Are all of the charge bias terminals connected?	Go to step 4.	Secure the connections and/or replace the CTM or development unit.	
4. Replace the power pack. Does the problem still remain?	Replace the FDU or FCE.		
5. If the sub-code is 12, do the following.			
6. Does CN21-3 stay low while in standby mode?	Replace the FDU or FCE.	Go to step 7.	
7. Does CN21-8 stay low while in standby mode?	Replace the power pack.		

Symptom: LD Failure (Error Code 9-20)

This error occurs in the following condition:

• The laser synchronization signal was not detected within 10 ms of the start of printing (sub-code 21)

Check Action if Yes Action if No

Check that all the laser optic components are aligned correctly and clean them if necessary.

Check that the optical fibre is properly set.

Check the connection between the FDU (CN26) and the LDDR.

Check that the polygonal mirror motor and LDDR are correctly positioned.

If the problem still remains, replace the LDDR, FDU or FCE.

TROUBLESHOOTING SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

Symptom: Fusing Unit Failure (Error Code 9-22)

This error occurs in any of the following conditions:

- During printing: If the fusing lamp stays above 190 °C for more than 60 s (sub-code 01)
- Before start printing: If the fusing lamp takes more than 40 s to reach 165 °C (sub-code 02)
- Power saver mode (fusing lamp OFF selected): If the fusing lamp takes more than 20 minutes to fall back to 100 °C. (sub-code 03)
- Power saver mode (fusing lamp Standby selected): If the fusing lamp takes more than 20 minutes to fall back to 100 °C. (sub-code 04)
- Power saver mode (fusing lamp Standby selected): If the fusing lamp stays below 80
 °C for more than 18 s (sub-code 05)
- During printing: If the fusing lamp stays below 140 °C for more than 1 s (sub-code 07)
- At any time: If the fusing lamp temperature reaches 250 °C (sub-code 08)
- At power on: If a thermistor defect (disconnection) is detected (sub-code 09)

Check Action if Yes Action if No

Before checking anything, do the following.

Reset the RAM address 80033C(H) to 00(H), then switch the power off, wait for a few seconds, then switch back on. If the problem remains, check the following points.

Sub-code 01, 03, 04:

1. Replace the fusing lamp, thermistor, PSU, FDU and/or FCE.

Sub-code 02, 05, 07:

- 1. Check if the fusing lamp, thermostat, and/or the thermofuse is(are) open or not.
 - If yes, replace the defective component(s).
 - If no, go to step 2.
- 2. Check if ac power is supplied to the lamp from the PSU or not.
 - If yes, go to step 3.
 - If no, replace the PSU.
- 3. Check if FDU CN12-1 and/or FDU CN12-2 stays low during printing.
 - If yes, replace the PSU, FDU, or FCE.
 - If no, check the connection from the PSU to the lamp.

Sub-code 08:

- 1. Check for any defects in the machine, and replace the defective parts. If any damage could not be found, go to step 2.
- 2. Check if the thermistor is shorted or not.
 - If yes, replace the thermistor.
 - If no, try replacing the FDU and/or FCE

Sub-code 09:

1. Check the connection between the FDU (CN25) and the thermistor.



Symptom: Polygonal Mirror Motor Failure (Error Code 9-23)

This error occurs in either of the following conditions:

- If FDU CN14-4 does not go low within 10 s of the polygonal mirror motor being switched on (sub-code 31)
- If FDU CN14-4 goes back to high for 3 s or more during polygonal mirror motor operation (sub-code 32)

Check	Action if Yes	Action if No		
1. Check the connection between the FDU (CN14) and the polygonal mirror motor.				
2. Check that +24VM from	Replace the polygonal	Replace the FDU.		
the FDU (CN14-1) is	mirror motor.	If the problem still remains,		
supplied to the polygonal		replace the FCE.		
mirror motor.				

Symptom: Main Motor Failure (Error Code 9-24)

This error occurs in either of the following conditions:

- If FDU CN15-4 does not go low within 10 s of the main motor being switched on (subcode 41)
- If FDU CN15-4 goes back to high for 3 s or more during main motor operation (subcode 42)

code 42)		
Check	Action if Yes	Action if No
Check that the main motor drive mechanism is not obstructed.		
2. Check that all the main motor drive gears are correctly installed.		
3. Replace the main motor.	Replace the FDU.	
Does the problem still	If the problem still occurs,	
remain?	replace the FCE.	

6.4. ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that error codes 4-00, 01, 02, and 10 only appear in the error code display and on the service report.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-00	DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed	Check the line connection. Check the NCU - FDU connectors. The machine at the other end may be incompatible. Replace the NCU or FCE. Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope. If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line.
0-01	DCN received unexpectedly	The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer. The other party pressed Stop during communication.
0-03	Incompatible modem at the other end	The other terminal is incompatible.
0-04	CFR or FTT not received after modem training	Check the line connection. Check the NCU - FDU connectors. Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. Replace the FCE or NCU. The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine. If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line. Cross reference Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN), RAM 807FB7 (PABX) Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN), G3 Switch 08 (PABX) Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4-4
0-05	Unsuccessful after modem training at 2400 bps	Check the line connection. Check the NCU - FDU connectors. Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer. Replace the FCE or NCU. Check for line problems. Cross reference See error code 0-04.
0-06	The other terminal did not reply to DCS	Check the line connection. Check the FDU - NCU connectors. Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. Replace the NCU or FCE. The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine. Check for line problems. Cross reference See error code 0-04.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-07	No post-message	Check the line connection.
	response from the other	Check the FDU - NCU connectors.
	end after a page was sent	Replace the NCU or FCE.
		The other end may have jammed or run out of paper.
		The other end user may have disconnected the call.
		Check for a bad line.
		The other end may be defective; try sending to
		another machine.
0-08	The other end sent RTN	Check the line connection.
	or PIN after receiving a	Check the FDU - NCU connectors.
	page, because there	Replace the NCU or FCE.
	were too many errors	The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper
		or memory space.
		Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer
		settings.
		The other end may have a defective
		modem/NCU/FDU; try sending to another machine.
		Check for line problems and noise.
		Cross reference
		Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN), RAM 807FB7
		(PABX)
		Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN), G3 Switch
		08 (PABX)
		Dedicated Tx parameters - Section 4-4
0-14	Non-standard post	Check the FDU - NCU connectors.
	message response code	Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending
	received	to another machine.
		Noisy line: resend.
		Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer
		settings.
		Replace the NCU or FCE.
		Cross reference
0.45	 1 .1	See error code 0-08.
0-15	The other end does not	The other terminal does not have the confidential rx
	have the confidential or	or transfer function, or the other terminal's memory is
0.40	transfer function	full.
0-16	CFR or FTT not detected	Check the line connection.
	after modem training in	Check the FDU - NCU connectors.
	confidential or transfer	Replace the NCU or FCE.
	mode	Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer
		settings.
		The other end may have disconnected, or it may be
		defective; try calling another machine. If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a line
		problem.
		Cross reference
		See error code 0-08.
0-17	Communication was	
0-17	interrupted by pressing	If the Stop key was not pressed and this error keeps occurring, replace the operation panel or OPU.
	the Stop key.	occurring, replace the operation parter of Or O.
	and drop hey.	

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-20	Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining	Check the line connection. Check the FDU - NCU connectors. Replace the NCU or FCE. Check for line problems. Try calling another fax machine. Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting. Cross reference Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6 Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN), G3 Switch 08 (PABX)
0-21	EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal	Check the connections between the FDU, NCU, & line. Check for line noise or other line problems. Replace the NCU or FCE. The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected. Cross reference Maximum interval between EOLs and ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4
0-22	The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 0.2 s)	Check the line connection. Check the FDU - NCU connectors. Replace the NCU or FCE. Defective remote terminal. Check for line noise or other line problems. Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Cross reference Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1
0-23	Too many errors during reception	Check the line connection. Check the FDU - NCU connectors. Replace the NCU, FDU or FCE. Defective remote terminal. Check for line noise or other line problems. Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level. Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria. Cross reference Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN), G3 Switch 08 (PABX) Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1
0-24	Printer failure occurred while the memory was full during non-ECM reception; negative response returned	There is no memory space available, or substitute reception is disabled. Try asking the user to add optional extra memory.

Meaning

not reply to NSS(A) in Al

The other terminal did

short protocol mode

printing

printing

printing

tx mode

received

Only one V.21

Paper present at the

Paper ran out during

Paper ran out after

or the cassette was pulled out during printing

connection flag was

The cover was opened

The modem cannot enter

fusing exit after printing

1-21

1-30

1-34

1-71

2-10

2-11

Code

0-30

Suggested Cause/Action

Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer

Check the line connection.

Check the FDU - NCU connectors.

a .		Short protocor mode	settings. The other terminal may not be compatible. Cross reference Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4-4
	0-52	Polarity changed during communication	Check the line connection. Retry communication.
	1-00	Document jam	Incorrectly inserted document or unsuitable document type. Check the ADF drive components and sensors. Cross reference ADF mechanical problems - Section 6-2-1
	1-01	Document length exceeded the maximum	Try changing the maximum acceptable document length. Divide the document into smaller pieces. Check the ADF drive components and sensors. Cross reference Max. document length - Scanner switch 00, bits 2 and 3 ADF mechanical problems - Section 6-2-1
	1-10	Paper at the scan line when the power was turned on.	Remove the paper. Check the scan line sensor. Cross reference ADF mechanical problems - Section 6-2-1
	1-17	Document jam in the feed-out area	Clear any debris from the sensor actuator. Check the ADF drive components and sensors. Cross reference ADF mechanical problems - Section 6-2-1
	1-20	Paper did not reach the fusing exit at the end of	Remove the paper. Check the printer drive components and sensors.

Cross reference

Remove the paper.

Cross reference

Add paper in the cassette.

Add paper in the cassette.

Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2

Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2

Close the cover or put back the cassette.

Check the printer drive components and sensors.



Replace the FCE.

Change the FCE.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
2-12	Modem clock irregularity	Replace the FCE.
2-20	Abnormal coding/decoding (cpu not ready)	Replace the FCE.
2-50	The machine reset itself	Replace the FCE.
4-00	One page took longer than 8 minutes to transmit	Check for a bad line. Try the communication at a lower resolution, or without halftone. Change the FCE.
4-01	Line current was cut	Check the line connector. Check the connection between FDU and NCU. Check for line problems. Replace the FDU or the NCU.
4-02	The other end cut the received page as it was longer than the maximum limit.	Split the page into smaller pieces, or ask the other end to change their maximum receive length setting, then resend.
4-10	Communication failed because of ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections)	Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend. The machine at the other end may be defective.
5-00	Data reconstruction not possible	Replace the FCE.
5-10	DCR timer expired	Replace the FCE.
5-20	Storage impossible because of a lack of	Temporary memory shortage.
	memory	Test the SAF memory.
5-21	Memory overflow	Replace the FCE or optional IC card.
5-22	Mode table overflow after the second page of a scanned document	Wait for the messages which are currently in the memory to be sent or delete some files from memory.
5-23	Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message	Test the SAF memory. Ask the other end to resend the message. Replace the FCE or IC memory card.
5-24	Memory overflow after the second page of a scanned document	Try using a lower resolution setting. Wait for the messages which are currently in the memory to be sent or delete some files from memory.
5-25	SAF file access error	Replace the FCE or IC memory card.
5-30	Mode table for the first page to be printed was not effective	Replace the FCE or IC memory card.
6-01	G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received	Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer. Replace the FCE, FDU or NCU.
6-02	G3 ECM - EOR was received	

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
6-03	G3 ECM - non-standard V.21 code received	The other terminal may be defective.
6-04	G3 ECM - RTC not detected	Check the line connection. Check connections from the NCU to the FDU. Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. Replace the FCE, FDU or NCU.
6-05	G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail	Check the line connection. Check connections from the NCU to the FDU. Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. Replace the FCE, FDU or NCU. Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer Cross reference Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN), G3 Switch 08 (PABX)
6-06	G3 ECM - coding/decoding error	Defective FDU. The other terminal may be defective.
6-08	G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL	The other end pressed Stop during communication. The other terminal may be defective.
6-09	G3 ECM - ERR received	Check for a noisy line. Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines. See code 6-05.
6-10	G3 ECM - error frames still received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps	Check for line noise. Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address). Check the line connection. Defective remote terminal.
6-11	G3 ECM - printing impossible because of a missing first line in the MMR coding	Check for problems in the printer mechanism.
6-21	V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication	The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
6-39	V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s	Replace the FCE.
9-07	Paper non-feed or jam at the cassette entrance	If the problem persists, replace the FDU. Cross reference Paper non-feed - Section 6-2-2 Jam at the cassette entrance - Section 6-2-2
9-08	Paper jam inside the development area	If the problem persists, replace the FDU. Cross reference Paper jam - Section 6-2-2
9-09	Paper jam in the fusing exit area	If the problem persists, replace the FDU. Cross reference Paper jam - Section 6-2-2
9-10 9-12	Toner end detected Cover open detected during printing	Replace the CTM. Close the cover, or check the cover sensors.

TROUBLESHOOTING ERROR CODES



Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
9-17	Charge corona unit failure	If the problem persists, replace the FDU. Cross reference
		Charge corona failure - Section 6-3
9-20	Laser diode failure	If the problem persists, replace the FDU.
0 20		Cross reference
		LD failure - Section 6-3
9-22	Fusing lamp failure	If the problem persists, replace the FDU.
		Cross reference
		Fusing lamp failure - Section 6-3
9-23	Hexagonal mirror motor	If the problem persists, replace the FDU.
	failure	Cross reference
		Mirror motor failure - Section 6-3
9-24	Main motor failure	If the problem persists, replace the FDU.
		Cross reference
		Main motor failure - Section 6-3
9-80	Bypass feed - paper non-	Check the registration roller and sensor.
	feed or jam at the	Cross reference
	entrance	Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2
9-81	Bypass feed - paper	Check the paper feed mechanism and sensors.
	length exceeds the	Cross reference
	maximum limit (600 mm)	Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2
9-82	Optional 100 sheet	Check the paper feed mechanism and sensors.
	cassette - paper non-	Cross reference
	feed or jam at the cassette entrance	Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2
9-83		Chack the paper food mechanism and concern
9-03	Optional 100 sheet cassette - paper length	Check the paper feed mechanism and sensors. Cross reference
	exceeds the maximum	Printer mechanical problems - Section 6-2-2
	limit (600 mm)	1 miles medianical problems Geodon 6 2-2

6.5. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

6.5.1. Defective Sensor Table

Sensor	Symptoms if Defective
Document sensor	"CLEAR ORIGINAL" or "DIAL FAX NO" is
	displayed at power-up.
	"SET DOCUMENT" is still displayed after a
	document is placed in the feeder.
Scan line sensor	"CLEAR ORIGINAL" is displayed at power-
	up.
	"CLEAR ORIGINAL" is displayed soon after
	the start of copying.
Interlock switches	There is no alarm on opening the cover,
	and "CLOSE COVER" is not displayed.
	"CLOSE COVER" is displayed at power-up.
Registration sensor	"CLEAR COPY" is displayed at power-up.
Fusing exit sensor	"CLEAR COPY" is displayed soon after the
	start of copying.
Bypass feed sensor	Bypass feed cannot be used.
Toner end sensor	Toner end is not indicated.
Paper size sensor - Standard cassette	"ADD PAPER" is displayed at power-up.
	Page separation may be done even if the
	original is the same size as the copy paper.
Paper end sensor - Standard cassette	The Add Paper indicator lights even if paper is remaining.
	The Add Paper indicator does not light
	when the paper has run out.
Paper size sensor - 100 sheet cassette	"ADD PAPER" is displayed at power-up.
	Page separation may be done even if the
	original is the same size as the copy paper.
Paper end sensor - 100 sheet cassette	The Add Paper indicator on the lower
	cassette's operation panel lights even if
	paper is remaining.
	The Add Paper indicator on the lower
	cassette's operation panel does not light
	when the paper has run out.

6.5.2. Blown Fuse Table

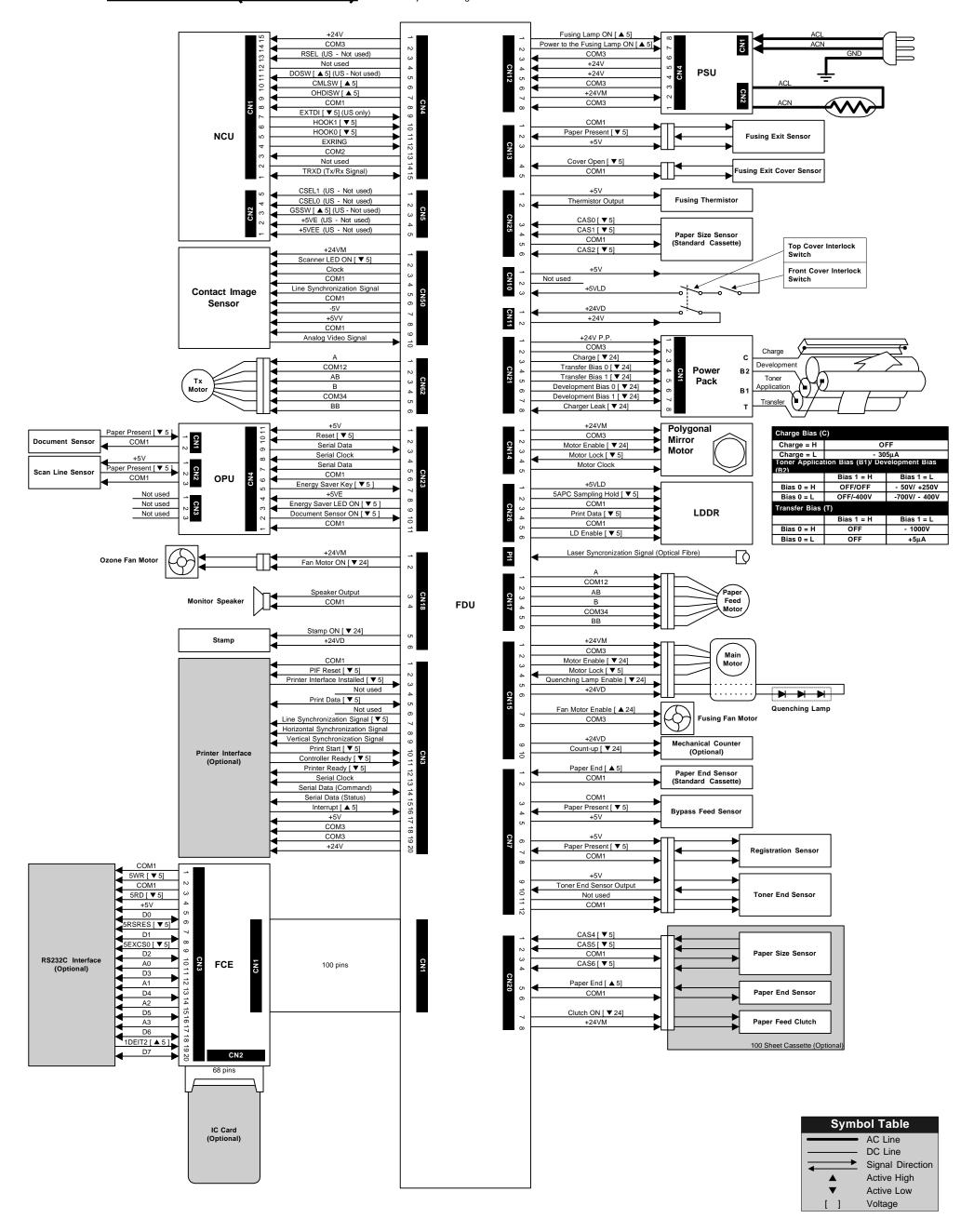
The only service-replaceable fuses are the following.

Fuse	Symptoms if Defective
PSU - F1/ F2/F3	No power to the machine
	(F3 - 220V PSU only)
Thermofuse (Not installed in the US model.)	Fusing power is not supplied.



Point-to-Point Diagram Model: FX6 (FAX2700L)

Issued on: April 10th, 1995 Revision 1.1 Subject to change





TECHNICAL BULLETIN

Model: FR6		Date: 31-	Oct-97	No: 001	1/35
Subject: New Model FR6 Release			Prepared by: K. Misugi		
From: Technical Service Department			Checked by: S. Fujii		
Classification:	☐ Troubleshooting	Part information		Action required	
	☐ Mechanical ☐] Electrical		☐ Service manual revis	sion
	☐ Paper path] Transmit/red	eive	☐ Retrofit information	
	⊠ Other ()				

The new model FR6 (FAX3800L) has been released as a successor model to the FX6 (FAX2700L).

This technical bulletin contains information on differences between the FR6 and the FX6. They are listed in order of sections that appear in the service manual.

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1. SPECIFICATIONS

Item	FX6	FR6
Maximum Scan Width	216 mm [8.5 ins] ± 0.25%	256 mm [10 ins] ± 0.25% (Effective Scan Width: 250 mm [9.8 ins])
Memory Capacity (SAF)	244 kbytes (19 pages/ITU-T #1 Chart)	0.5 Mbyte (40 pages/ITU-T #1 Chart)
		With 1 Mbyte memory card:120 pages
		With 2 Mbytes memory card: 200 pages
		With 4 Mbytes memory card: 360 pages
Compression	MH, MR, <u>EFC</u> , MMR, SSC	MH, MR, MMR, SSC
Modulation	V.29, V.27, V.21	V.34, V.17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21
Data Rate	9,600/7,200/4,800/2,400 bps	33,600/31,200/28,800/26,400/ 24,000/21,600/19,200/16,800/ 14,400/12,000/9,600/7,200/4,800/ 2,400 bps
		Automatically adjusted in accordance with V.34, Automatic fallback to V.17, V.29, V.27ter
Transmission Time	9 s at 9600 bps; G3 ECM, ITU-T # 1 Chart, STD	3 s at 28,800 bps: G3 ECM, ITU-T # 1 Chart, STD
Paper Feed Unit	Not Available	Optional Paper Feed Unit Available (500 sheets, Letter, Legal)



TECHNICAL BULLETIN

1.2. FEATURES

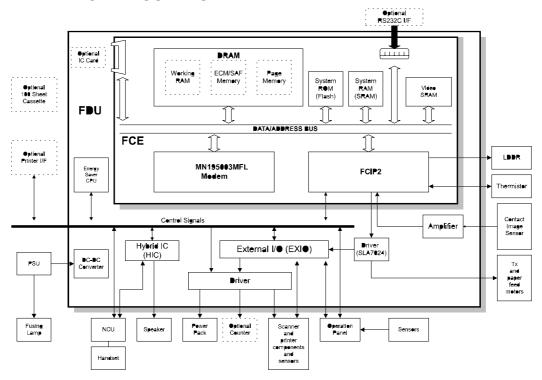
The following features are available.

Features	FX6	FR6
Confidential Reception	Available with memory card	Standard
Batch Transmission	Available with memory card	Standard
Economy Transmission	Not available	Standard
Forwarding	Available with memory card	Standard
Personal codes with Conf. ID	Available with memory card	Standard
Transmission Deadline (TRD)	Available with memory card	Standard
Two in one	Not available	Available
Checkered mark	Not available	Available
Confidential ID	Available with memory card	Standard
Memory Lock (ID)	Available with memory card	Standard
Multi-Sort Document Reception	Available with memory card	Standard
Reverse Order Printing	Available with memory card	Standard
User Function Keys	Not available	Available (2 keys)
Confidential File Report	Available with memory card	Standard

RIGOH

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

1.4. OVERALL MACHINE CONTROL



The FCE contains the FCIP2, DRAM, SRAM, System ROM, MN195003MFL modem, and video processing memory. It controls the entire system through the FDU.

The FCIP2 does not contain the modem block. The Panasonic MN195003MFL modem is used for all the communications (V.34, V.17, V.29, V.27ter., and V.21).

The 2 MB DRAM contains the SAF memory, ECM buffer memory, work area, and page memory. The SAF memory can be extended by 1, 2 or 4 Mbytes with an IC card option. A 1 MB (8 Mbit) flash ROM is used for the system ROM.

The FR6 uses two CPUs in the same way as the FX6. These are the main CPU in the FCIP2 and the power saver CPU which is used during the 2 W power saver mode.

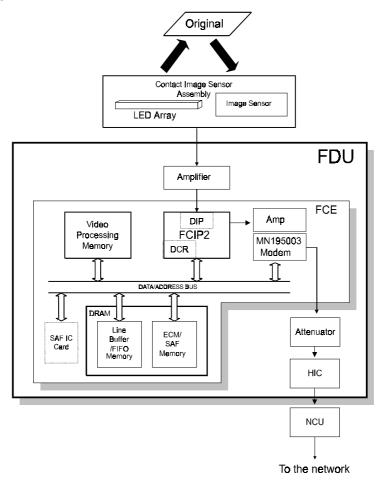
The main differences in PCB components between the FR6 and the FX6 are listed below.

	FX6	FR6
	FCIP used	FCIP2 used (The FCIP2 is used in common with the LFO.)
FCE	Rockwell R144EFXL modem used.	Panasonic MN195003MFL modem used.
	512 kB (4 Mbit) flash ROM used.	1 MB (8 Mbit) flash ROM used.
	1 MB DRAM used.	2 MB DRAM used.
FDU	FPD motor driver used.	SLA7024M motor driver used.

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

1.5. VIDEO DATA PATH

1.5.1 Transmission



Immediate Transmission:

Scanned data from the CIS passes to the DIP block in the FCIP2. After analog/digital video processing, the DCR block compresses the data for transmission. The compressed data then passes either to the FIFO memory or to the ECM memory before it is sent through the modem. The MN195003 modem is used for all the communications.

Memory Transmission:

The scanned data is stored in the SAF memory after compression in the DCR block. At the time for transmission, the DCR block decompresses the data from the SAF memory, then compresses it again after handshaking with the other terminal is done. The compressed data then passes either to the FIFO memory or to the ECM memory, before it is sent.

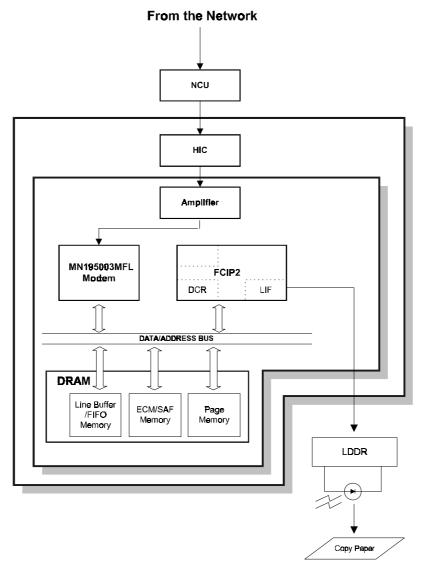
Parallel Memory Transmission:

This feature allows the machine to scan a document into the SAF memory and send the same document simultaneously.

The machine stores the processed video data in the SAF memory and sends the data through the modem at the same time.



1.5.2. Reception



Data from the line passes to the modem through the NCU and hybrid IC. After the modem demodulates the data, the decompressed data passes to the DCR block, through either the FIFO or the ECM memory, where the data is decompressed to raster image data. At the same time, the compressed data passes to the SAF memory as a backup in case of mechanical problems during printing (substitute reception).

The raster image data is then passed to the page memory for printing. After a page of data has been stored in the page memory, the data is sent to the LDDR through the LIF block.

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.3. SYSTEM FEATURES

2.3.2. Automatic Service Calls

The following RAM addresses are different from the FX6.

2. Excessive Jam Alarms

Parar	neters	Address (H)		Initial Settings	Sys. Para. List
		ADF	Printer		
DEC (1 - 255; 0	= Disabled)	8001F5	8001F9	10 (H)	X
CALL (3 - 15; 0 = Disabled)		8001F6	8001FA	06 (H)	Y
CLR	(Low)	8001F7	8001FB	30 (H)	_
	(High)	8001F8	8001FC	00 (H)	

Counters	Address (H)		Sys. Para. List
	ADF	Printer	
JAM: Jam counter used to place a service call	8001EE	8001F2	Z
NO-JAM1: Counter used for JAM counter decrement	8001ED	8001F1	
NO-JAM2: Counter used for	8001EF (Low)	8001F3 (Low)	_
clearing the JAM counter	8001F0 (High)	8001F4 (High)	

3. Periodic Service Call

Parameters		Address (H)
Call interval: 01 through 15 month(s) (BCD)		800266
00: Periodic Service Call Di	sabled	
Date and time of the next call		
	Year: last two digits of the year (BCD)	800267
Month: 01 through 12 (BCD)		800268
Day: 01 through 31 (BCD)		800269
	Hour: 00 through 23 (BCD)	80026A

4. PM Call

Address (H)	Bits 7 - 4	Bits 3 - 0
80019A	Tens	Units
80019B	Thousands	Hundreds
80019C	Hundred thousands	Ten thousands



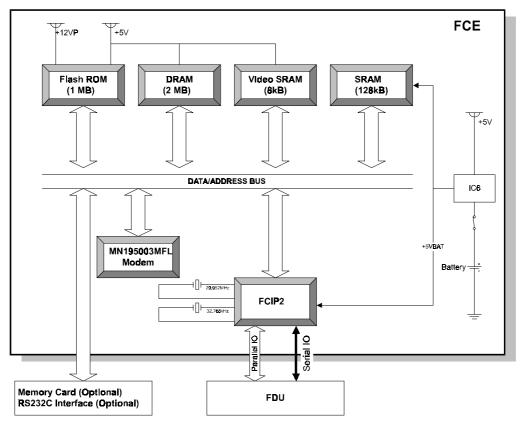
5. Effective Term of Service Calls

	Address (H)
Year: last two digits of the year (BCD)	800271
Month: 01 through 12 (BCD)	800272
Day: 01 through 31 (BCD)	800273

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

2.4. PCBs

2.4.1. FCE



HE16DE30 CDD

1. FCIP2 (Facsimile Controller and Image Processor)

- CPII
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- Digital image processor (DIP)
- Laser interface (LIF)
- DMA controller
- Clock generation
- Stepper motor control
- Serial interface to the FDU
- DRAM backup control
- · Fusing lamp control

2. Modem (Panasonic MN195003MFL)

• V.34, V.17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21 modem

3. ROM

• 1 MB (8 Mbit) flash ROM for system software storage.

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

4. DRAM

- 2 MB DRAM shared between the Line Buffer (32 kB), ECM Buffer (128 kB), Page Memory (768 kB), SAF memory (512 kB), and working area.
- Backed up by the battery on the FDU.

5. SRAM

- 128 kB SRAM for system and user parameter storage.
- Backed up by the battery on the FCE.

6. Video SRAM

• 8 kB SRAM for video processing.

7. Oscillators

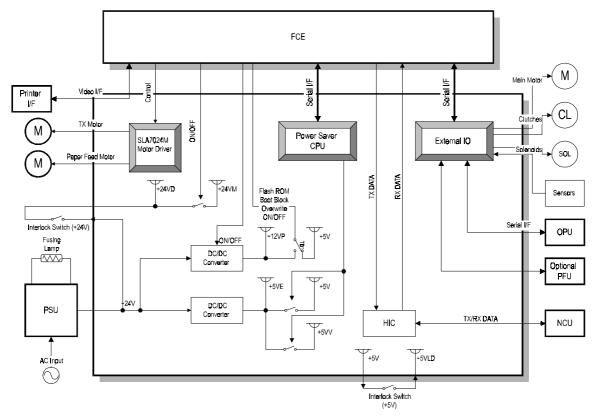
- 29.952 MHz oscillator for system clock generation.
- 32.768 MHz oscillator for the real time clock. This is backed up by the battery on the FCE.
- 24.192 MHz oscillator for the MN195003MFL modem.

8. Jumpers, Switches, and Test Points

Item	Description
SW1	Switches the backup battery ON/OFF

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

2.4.2. FDU



H516D531.CDR

1. Power Saver CPU

4-bit CPU for controlling the machine during power saver mode

2. DC/DC Converters

- +5V generation
- +12V generation

3. Motor Driver (SLA7024M)

• Stepper motor driver

4. EXIO (External I/O)

- Serial interface to the FCE and OPU
- Serial interface to an optional paper feed unit
- Parallel interface to the main motor, clutches, and sensors

5. HIC (Hybrid IC)

- 2-4 wire switching
- Filters and amplifiers
- Monitor speaker driver

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

6. Interlock Switches

- The fusing unit interlock switch (+24V) disables the power supply to the drive components and the power pack.
- The fusing unit interlock switch (+5V) disables the laser diode power.



4. SERVICE TABLES AND PROCEDURES

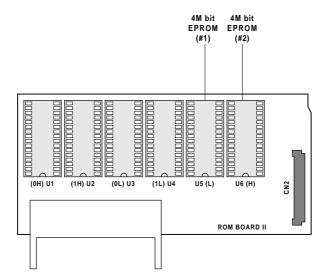
4.1. SERVICE LEVEL FUNCTIONS

4.1.20. Software Download (Function 12)

This function copies software from an external medium to the Flash ROM on the machine's FCE. The procedures to download the software are the same as for the FX6 series.

However, if you are using the EPROM board, you must mount two 4-Mbit EPROMs because this machine uses an 8-Mbit EPROM on the FCE.

NOTE: The Flash/SRAM data copy board which is used in common with the ADAM and LFO (P/N: A1939351) must be used for this procedure.



Data Copy Board P/N: A1939351

Mount the 4-Mbit EPROM #1 in the ROM socket U5 (L) and the 4-Mbit EPROM # 2 in the ROM socket U6 (H) as shown.

It is not necessary to change the jumper at TB1 on the FCU or change system bit switch 02 bit 5 for this machine.



4.2. BIT SWITCHES

RAM Reset Level 1:

The address for RAM reset level 1 has been changed to 800005(H). Change the data to FF(H), then turn the machine off and on to reset all the system settings.

Communication Parameters

Mode	DCS: ITU-T standard	NSS: Non-standard G3
Modem rate	336: 33,600 bps	168: 16,800 bps
	312: 31,200 bps	144: 14,400 bps
	288: 28,800 bps	120: 12,000 bps
	264: 26,400 bps	96: 9,600 bps
	240: 24,000 bps	72: 7,200 bps
	216: 21,600 bps	48: 4,800 bps
	192: 19,200 bps	24: 2,400 bps
Communication mode	ECM: With ECM	SSC: Using SSC
	NML: With no ECM or	SSC
Compression mode MMR: MMR compression		sion
	MR: MR compression	
	MH: MH compression	
Resolution SSF: Fine, transmitted at 8 x 15.4 dots per mm		•
	DTL: Detail, transmitted at 8 x 7.7 dots per mm	
	· ·	nitted at 8 x 3.85 dots per mm
I/O rate		10M: 10 ms/line
	2/M: 2.5 ms/line	
5M: 5 ms/line 40M: 40 ms/lin		
Width and reduction	=A4: A4 (8.3"), no red	
	=B4: B4 (10.1") no reduction	
	A4: Reduced to A4 (8)	.3") before transmission

System Switch 02		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.

System Switch 06		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
5	PC Fax Expander Function	1: Set this bit to 1 when the PC Fax Expander option
	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	has been installed.

Syst	System Switch 10		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Threshold memory level of	Threshold memory = N × 64 kbytes + 256 kbytes	
to	parallel memory transmission	N can be between 00 - FF(H)	
7		Default setting: 04(H) = 512 kbyte	

Syst	System Switch 11		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
6	Conditions for memory reception if no RTI or CSI is received	This switch functions in combination with user parameter switch 05 bit 1. User parameter switch 05 bit 1 must be set to 1 to	
		enable this switch.	
	O: Allow memory reception only when RTI or CSI is received 1: Allow memory reception only when RTI or CSI is received and a printer (mechanical) error has occurred	User parameter switch 05 bit 1: Switch to allow memory reception if no RTI or CSI is received. 0: Allow memory reception for all communications 1: Reject if RTI or CSI is not received	

Syst	System Switch 17		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
6	Dialing without inserting a document 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Dialing cannot be done without inserting a document in the ADF.	

Prin	Printer Switch 02		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Paper Feed Priority 0: Optional paper feed unit >> 100-sheet cassette >> Standard cassette 1: Optional paper feed unit >> Standard cassette >> 100-sheet cassette	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses for feeding the paper when all the cassettes contain the same paper size.	

Communication Switch 01		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
1	Not used	Do not change the settings.



Con	Communication Switch 17		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Selective Polling Reception	1: Selective polling reception (SEP) is disabled.	
	0: Disabled		
	1: Enabled		
1	Subaddress function (RX)	1: Subaddress reception is disabled.	
	0: Disabled		
	1: Enabled		

G3 Switch 03		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
2	Use of V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: V.8 protocol is disabled.

RIGON

G3 S			
	FUI	NCTION	COMMENTS
0	Initial Tx mod	lem rate	These bits set the initial starting modem rate for
to	Bit 3 2 1 0	Setting (bps)	transmission.
3		2.4k	
	0 0 1 0		Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you
		7.2k	need to change this for specific receivers.
	0 1 0 0		
	0 1 0 1		
		14.4k	
		16.8k	
	1 0 0 0		
	1 0 0 1	-	
	1 0 1 0		
	1 0 1 1	-	
	1 1 0 0		
		31.2k	
		33.6k	
	Other setting		
4		type for 9.6k or	These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6k and
to	7.2kbps (tran		7.2kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these
5	Bit 5 Bit 4	Setting	speeds.
	0 0	V.29	
	0 1	V.17	
	1 0	Not used	
	1 1	Not used	

G3 S	G3 Switch 06		
	FUNCTION	COMMENTS	
0	Initial Rx modem rate	The setting of these bits is used to inform the	
to	Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps)	transmitting terminal of the available modem rate for	
3	0 0 0 1 2.4k	the machine in receive mode.	
	0 0 1 0 4.8k		
	0 0 1 1 7.2k	Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems	
	0 1 0 0 9.6k	during reception.	
	0 1 0 1 12.0k		
	0 1 1 0 14.4k		
	0 1 1 1 16.8k		
	1 0 0 0 19.2k		
	1 0 0 1 21.6k		
	1 0 1 0 24.0k		
	1 0 1 1 26.4k		
	1 1 0 0 28.8k		
	1 1 0 1 31.2k		
	1 1 1 0 33.6k		
	Other settings - Not used		

RIGON

4	Modem types available for	The setting of these bits is used to inform the
to	reception	transmitting terminal of the available modem type for
7	Bit 7 6 5 4 Setting	the machine in receive mode.
	0 0 0 1 V.27ter	
	0 0 1 0 V.27ter, V.29	
	0 0 1 1 Not used	
	0 1 0 0 V.27ter, V.29,	
	V.17,	
	0 1 0 1 V.27ter, V.29,	
	V.17, V.34	
	Other settings - Not used	

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

4.5. SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

The complete RAM addresses are listed because there are too many changes from the FX6.

800005(H) - RAM Reset Level 1

Change the data at this address to FF (H), then switch the machine off and on to reset all the system settings.

Caution: Before using this RAM, print the settings of all the system parameters (System Parameter List).

800001 to 800004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

800001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

800002(H) - Year (BCD)

800003(H) - Month (BCD)

800004(H) - Day (BCD)

800006 to 800016(H) - Machine's serial number (17 digits - ASCII)

800018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

800019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

80001A(H) - Boot program checksum (low)

80001B(H) - Boot program checksum (high)

80001C(H) - Main program checksum (low)

80001D(H) - Main program checksum (high)

80001E(H) - RDS program update counter (hex)

800020 to 80003F(H) - System bit switches

800040 to 80004F(H) - Scanner bit switches

800050 to 80005F(H) - Printer bit switches

800060 to 80007F(H) - Communication bit switches

800080 to 80008F(H) - G3 bit switches

8000A0(H) - User parameter switch 00

Bit 0: Stamp home position

Bits 1 and 2: Scanning contrast home position

Bit 2 1 Setting

0 0 Normal

0 1 Lighten

1 0 Darken

Bit 3: Do not adjust

Bits 4 and 5: Scanning resolution home position

Bit 5 4 Setting

0 0 Standard

0 1 Detail

1 0 Fine

Bit 6: Transmission mode home position

Bit 7: Halftone home position

0: Memory tx, 1: Immediate tx

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

8000A1(H) - User parameter switch 01 Bits 0 to 6: Not used	
Bit 7: Settings return to home position after transmission	0: Disabled , 1: Enabled
8000A2(H) - User parameter switch 02 Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies Bit 2: Reception time printing Bit 3: TSI included in transmitted messages Bit 4: Checkered mark printing Bits 5 to 7: Not used	0: Disabled, 1: Enabled 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
8000A3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (Automatic report 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) Bit 1: Not used Bit 2: Memory storage report Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmission Bit 6: Polling clear report Bit 7: TCR (Journal)	0: Off, 1: On 0: Off, 1: On 0: Off, 1: On 0: Off, 1: On
8000A4(H) - User parameter switch 04 Bit 0: Automatic confidential reception report output Bits 1 to 6: Not used Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports	0: Off, 1: On 0: Off, 1: On
8000A5(H) - User parameter switch 05 Bit 0: Substitute reception Bit 1: Memory reception if no RTI or CSI received 0: Bits 2 and 3: Not used Bit 4: Restricted Access Bit 5: Not used (keep this bit at 0.) Bit 6: Fusing lamp control during energy saver mode	0: Off, 1: On Possible, 1: Impossible 0: Off, 1: On
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	by temperature (80 °C)
8000A6(H) - User parameter switch 06 Bit 0: TTI Bit 1: Not used Bit 2: Closed network for transmission Bit 3: Not used	0: Off, 1: On 0: Off, 1: On
Bit 4: Batch transmission Bits 5 to 7: Not used	0: Off, 1: On

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

8000A7(H) - User parameter switch 07

Bits 0 to 2: Not used

Bit 3: Automatic reduction (B4 ->> A4) before transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 7: Not used

8000A8(H) - User parameter switch 08

Bit 0 and 1: Multi-copy reception

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are multi-copied.

1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are multicopied.

Bits 2 and 3: Authorized reception

Bit 3 2 Setting

X 0 Disabled

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 4 and 5: Specified cassette selection (optional PFU required)

Bit 3 2 Setting

X 0 Disabled

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are printed to the paper in a specified cassette.

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are printed to the paper in a specified cassette.

Bits 6 and 7: Forwarding

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are forwarded.

1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are forwarded.

8000A9(H) - User parameter switch 09

Bits 0 and 1: Memory lock (optional memory card required)

Bit 1 0 Setting

X 0 Disabled

1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified are kept in the memory until a memory lock ID is entered.

1 1 Faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified are kept in the memory until a memory lock ID is entered.

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

8000AA(H) - User parameter switch 10

Bit 0: Reverse order printing 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled Bit 1: Two in 1 (printing two Half-letter (A5) messages onto one Letter (A4) paper)

0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 2 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Halftone type 0: Error diffusion, 1: Dither

8000AB(H) - User parameter switch 11

Bits 0 to 5: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station

0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Polling Standby duration 0: Once, 1: No limit

8000AC(H) - User parameter switch 12

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Toner saving mode 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 3 and 4: Printout image density (Fax mode)

Bit 4 3 Setting

0 0 Normal

0 1 Lighten

1 0 Darken

1 1 Not used

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

8000AD(H) - User parameter switch 13

Bits 0 and 1: PSTN access method from behind PABX

Bit 1 0 Setting

0 0 PSTN

0 1 Loop start

1 0 Ground start

1 1 Flash start

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

8000AE - 8000AF(H) - User parameter 14 to 15

Not used

8000B9(H) - User function 62 settings

Bit 0: Night timer 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: RDS operation 0: Not acceptable

1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03

Bits 5 and 6: Not used

Bit 7: Daylight saving time 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

8000BA(H) - User function 62 settings

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Dialing type 0: Pulse dialing (10 pps), 1: Tone (DTMF) dialing

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

8000BB(H) - PSTN access number for loop start

Access number Hex value to program (BCD) F₀ 0 Û Û 0 F0 00 00 Û Ú 99 99

8000C8 to 8000DB(H) - RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Note 1

8000DC to 8000EF(H) - CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)

8000F0 to 80010F(H) - TTI (Max. 32 characters - ASCII) - Note 1

800110(H) - Number of CSI characters (Hex)

Note 1: If the number of characters are less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 32 for TTI). add a stop code (FF[H]) after the last character.

800111 to 80011F(H) - Service station's fax number (Service function 13)

800120 to 80012E(H) - Own fax number (User function 61)

80012F(H) - ID code (low - Hex)

800130(H) - ID code (high - Hex)

800131(H) - Confidential ID (low - BCD)

800132(H) - Confidential ID (high - BCD)

800133(H) - Memory lock ID (low - Hex)

800134(H) - Memory lock ID (high - Hex)

800140 to 800146(H) - Last power off time (Read only)

800140(H) - Year (BCD)

800141(H) - Month (BCD)

800142(H) - Day (BCD)

800143(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday,, 06: Sunday

800144(H) - Hour

800145(H) - Minute

800146(H) - Second

800150(H) - Optional equipment (Read only)

Bit 0: Memory card

0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 1-3: Not used

Bit 4: 100-sheet cassette
Bit 5: Paper feed unit

0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 5: Paper feed unit

0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 6-7: Not used

800151(H) - Optional equipment (Read only)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Printer interface

0: Not installed, 1: Installed

Bit 2-7: Not used.

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

The following counters are listed on the System Parameter List. The names used on the system parameter list are given in brackets

800158 to 80015A(H) - Tx counter (TX)

Address	High	Low
800158(H)	Tens digit	Unit digit
800159(H)	Thousands digit	Hundreds digit
80015A(H)	Millions digit	Ten thousands digit

Note: The following counters have the same data format as above.

80015B to 80015D(H) - Rx counter (RX)

80015E to 800160(H) - Scan counter (SCN)

800161 to 800163(H) - Print counter (PRT)

800164 to 800166(H) - Printer interface output counter (PRN)

800167 to 800169(H) - Paper feed counter: standard cassette (UPPER CASSETTE)

80016A to 80016C(H) - Paper feed counter: optional PFU (CASSETTE 2)

80016D to 80016F(H) - Paper feed counter: optional 100-sheet cassette

800170 to 800172(H) - Paper feed counter: bypass feed (BY-PASS)

800176 to 800178(H) - ADF counter (ADF)

80017C to 80017E(H) - Printer total jam counter (COPY JAM)

80017F to 800181(H) - Paper jam counter: standard cassette (UPPER CST JAM)

800182 to 800184(H) - Paper jam counter: optional PFU (CST 2 JAM)

800185 to 800187(H) - Paper jam counter: optional 100-sheet cassette (OPEN CST JAM)

800188 to 80018A(H) - Paper jam counter: bypass feed (BY-PASS)

80018B to 80018D(H) - Scanner total jam counter (DOC. JAM)

80018E to 800190(H) - Fusing exit jam counter (EJECT JAM)

800191 to 800193(H) - Registration jam counter (PAPER JAM)

800197 to 800199(H) - PM counter (PM)

80019A to 80019C(H) - PM call interval: default 60,000 (PM DEFAULT)

80019D to 80019F(H) - Copy counter (COPY)

8001A0 to 8001A2(H) - OPC (master drum) counter (PCU)

8001A3 to 8001A5(H) - OPC (master drum) replacement interval (default: 30,000 prints) The machine asks the user to replace the drum at this interval, if bit 3 of system bit switch 04 is 0.

8001A6 to 8001A8(H) - CTM counter (TONER)

8001ED to 8001FC(H) - Excessive jam call parameters

800200(H) - Number of copies in multi-sort document reception (User function 83)

```
800201 to 80022A(H) - Night timer period (User function 71)
   800201 to 800203(H) - Setting #1 for Monday
   800204 to 800206(H) - Setting #2 for Monday
   800207 to 800209(H) - Setting #1 for Tuesday
   80020A to 80020C(H) - Setting #2 for Tuesday
   80020D to 80020F(H) - Setting #1 for Wednesday
   800210 to 800212(H) - Setting #2 for Wednesday
   800213 to 800215(H) - Setting #1 for Thursday
   800216 to 800218(H) - Setting #2 for Thursday
   800219 to 80021B(H) - Setting #1 for Friday
   80021C to 80021E(H) - Setting #2 for Friday
   80021F to 800221(H) - Setting #1 for Saturday
   800222 to 800224(H) - Setting #2 for Saturday
   800225 to 800227(H) - Setting #1 for Sunday
   800228 to 80022A(H) - Setting #2 for Sunday
   Program format
   First byte - Hour (BCD)
   Second byte - Minute (BCD)
   Third byte - 00(H): Timer start time, 01(H): Timer end time
800255 to 80025B(H) - Last RDS operation (Read only)
   800255(H) - Year (BCD)
   800256(H) - Month (BCD)
   800257(H) - Day (BCD)
   800258(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, ......, 06: Sunday
   800259(H) - Hour
   80025A(H) - Minute
   80025B(H) - Second
80025D(H) - Daylight saving time setting (User function 62)
800260(H) - Transmission monitor volume
                                             00 - 07(H)
800261(H) - Reception monitor volume
                                             00 - 07(H)
800262(H) - On-hook monitor volume
                                             00 - 07(H)
800264(H) - Buzzer volume
                                             00 - 07(H)
800265(H) - Key acknowledgment tone volume 00 - 07(H)
800266 to 80026A(H) - Periodic service call parameters
800271 to 800273(H) - Effective term of automatic service calls
8002B4 to 8002B5(H) - Scanning top margin adjustment
8002B6 to 8002B7 (H) - Scanning bottom margin adjustment
```

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

80036F(H) - Details of the service call (hardware error)

- 01(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed above 175 °C while printing.
- 02(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not reach 150 °C before starting printing.
- 03(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 100 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp OFF was selected for power saver mode)
- 04(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 100 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (100 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 05(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed below 100 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (100 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 07(H) The fusing lamp temperature came below 140 °C while printing
- 08(H) The fusing lamp temperature exceeded 250 °C
- 09(H) A fusing thermistor error was detected

NOTE: When a service call was caused by a fusing unit failure (codes 01 - 09):

After fixing the problem, reset the data at this address to 00(H), then restart the machine to clear the service call. (Refer to address 800371(H) for other hardware failures.)

800370(H) - Excessive jam alarm

Bit 3: Scanner excessive jam alarm

1: An alarm has occurred

1: An alarm has occurred

NOTE: Either or both of these bits will change to 1 when an excessive jam alarm occurs. Reset each bit to 0 when you have solved the problem. The machine will not be able to detect excessive jams in future if you do not reset these bits.

800371(H) - Details of the service call (hardware error)

- 01(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed above 175 °C while printing.
- 02(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not reach 150 °C before starting printing.
- 03(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 100 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp OFF was selected for power saver mode)
- 04(H) The fusing lamp temperature did not go down to 100 °C while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (100 °C) was selected for power saver mode)
- 05(H) The fusing lamp temperature stayed below 100 $^{\circ}\text{C}$ while in standby mode (when fusing lamp Standby (100 $^{\circ}\text{C})$ was selected for power saver mode)
- 07(H) The fusing lamp temperature came below 140 °C while printing
- 08(H) The fusing lamp temperature exceeded 250 °C
- 09(H) A fusing thermistor error was detected
- 11(H) Charge leak current was detected while the charge corona unit was activated
- 12(H) Charge leak current was detected while the charge corona unit was not activated
- 21(H) The laser synchronization signal was not detected during printing
- 31(H) Polygonal mirror motor startup error
- 32(H) Polygonal mirror motor error during printing
- 41(H) Main motor startup error
- 42(H) Main motor error during printing

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

NOTE: When a service call was caused by a fusing lamp failure (codes 01 - 09):

The same code is stored at address 80036F(H).

After fixing the problem, reset the data at address 80036F(H) to 00(H), then restart the machine to clear the service call.

When a service call was caused by another hardware failure (codes 11 - 42):

If the problem remains after restarting the machine (power off/on), fix the hardware problem. The service call condition is cleared after power-up.

800383(H) - Print top margin (standard cassette)

800384(H) - Print top margin (optional PFU)

800385(H) - Print top margin (optional 100-sheet cassette)

800386(H) - Print top margin (bypass feeder)

800388(H) - Print left margin (standard cassette)

800389(H) - Print left margin (optional PFU)

80038A(H) - Print left margin (optional 100-sheet cassette)

80038B(H) - Print left margin (bypass feeder)

80039D(H) - Sensor status (standard cassette and internal printer mechanism)

Bit 0 to 3: Paper size sensor

Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting

0 0 0 1 Cassette not installed 0 0 1 0 Cassette not installed

0 1 0 0 Letter

0 1 0 1 Cassette not installed 0 1 1 0 Cassette not installed

0 1 1 1 Legal

1 0 0 Cassette not installed

Bit 4: Paper end sensor 1: Paper end

Bit 5: Registration sensor 1: Paper present 1: Paper pres

Bit 7: Standard cassette availability 0: Available, 1: Not available

(1: Jam, paper end, etc.)

80039E(H) - Sensor status (optional PFU)

Bit 0 to 3: Paper size sensor - The settings are the same as the standard cassette.

Bit 4: Paper end sensor 1: Paper end Bit 5: Registration sensor 1: Paper present

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Cassette availability 0: Available, 1: Not available

(1: Jam, paper end, etc.)

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

80039F(H) - Sensor status (optional 100-sheet cassette)

Bit 0 to 3: Paper size sensor - The settings are the same as the standard cassette.

Bit 4: Paper end sensor 1: Paper end

Bit 5: Not used Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Standard cassette availability 0: Available, 1: Not available

(1: Jam, paper end, etc.)

8003A0(H) - Sensor status (bypass feed)

Bit 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Paper in the bypass feed 1: Paper not present Bit 5: Bypass feed sensor 1: Paper present

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Bypass feed availability 0: Available, 1: Not available

(1: Jam, no paper, etc.)



8003AA(H) - Initial Toner Supply

Bit 3: Initial toner supply 0: Off, 1: On

Whenever the development unit is replaced, do the following procedure.

- 1. Make sure that a new development unit, drum, and CTM are correctly installed.
- 2. Turn on the machine and change this bit to 1.
- 3. Turn off the machine.
- 4. Turn on the machine. The machine starts filling up the empty development unit hopper with new toner. (This bit is reset to zero automatically.)
- 5. Make test copies or test patterns to check the print quality.

803540 to 8036BF(H) - Latest 64 error codes (Read only)

One error record consists of 6 bytes of data.

First error record start address - 803540(H)

Second error record start address - 803546(H)

Third error record start address - 80355C(H)

: : :

64th error record start address - 8036BA(H)

The format is as follows:

1st byte - Minute (BCD)

2nd byte - Hour (BCD)

3rd byte - Day (BCD)

4th byte - Month (BCD)

5th byte - Error code (low) [If the error code is 1-23, 23 is stored here.]

6th byte - Error code (high) [If the error code is 1-23, 01 is stored here.]

RIGOR

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

803D46 to 803F57(H) - Latest 10 error communication records

One error communication record consists of 53 bytes. The format is as follows:

1st byte - Header

Bit 0: Communication result 0: OK, 1: NG Bit 1: Document jam 1: Occurred

Bits 2 - 3: Not used

Bit 4: Technical data printout instead of personal codes 0: No. 1: Yes Bit 5: Type of technical data 0: Rx level, 1: Measure of error rate

Bit 6: Error report 0: Not printed, 1: Printed Bit 7: Data validity 0: Not valid, 1: Valid

2nd to 5th bytes - Date and time when the communication started

2nd byte - Month (BCD) 3rd byte - Day (BCD) 4th byte - Hour (BCD) 5th byte - Minute (BCD)

6th and 7th bytes - Communication time

6th byte - Minutes (BCD) 7th byte - Seconds (BCD)

8th byte - Number of pages transmitted or received (Hex)

9th and 10th bytes - Personal code or number of total/burst error lines

If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 0:

9th byte - Personal code (low - BCD)

10th byte - Personal code (high - BCD)

If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 1:

9th byte - Number of total error lines (Hex) 10th byte - Number of burst error lines (Hex)

11th byte - File number (low - Hex) 12th byte - File number (high - Hex)

13th and 14th bytes - Rx level or measure of error rate

If bit 5 of the 1st byte is 0:

13th byte - Rx level (low - Hex)

14th byte - Rx level (high - Hex)

If bit 4 of the 1st byte is 1:

13th byte - Measure of error rate (low - Hex) 14th byte - Measure of error rate (high - Hex)

```
15th byte - Final modem rate
Bits 0 to 3: Final modem speed
      Bit 3 2 1 0 Setting (bps)
         0 0 0 1 2.4k
         0 0 1 0 4.8k
         0 0 1 1 7.2k
         0 1 0 0 9.6k
         0 1 0 1 12.0k
         0 1 1 0 14.4k
         0 1 1 1 16.8k
         1 0 0 0 19.2k
         1 0 0 1 21.6k
         1 0 1 0 24.0k
         1 0 1 1 26.4k
         1 1 0 0 28.8k
         1 1 0 1 31.2k
         1 1 1 0 33.6k
Bits 4 to 7: Final modem type
      Bit 7 6 5 4 Setting
         0 0 0 1 V.27ter
         0 0 1 0 V.27ter, V.29
         0 0 1 1 Not used
         0 1 0 0 V.27ter, V.29, V.17,
         0 1 0 1 V.27ter, V.29, V.17, V.34
      Other settings - Not used
16th byte to 35th byte - Remote terminal's ID (RTI, TSI or CSI) (ASCII)
36th byte - Communication mode #1
Bits 0 - 1: Resolution used
      Bit 1 0
                Setting
         0
            1
                Standard
         1 0 Detail
             1 Fine
Bit 2: Not used
Bit 3: ECM
                               0: Off, 1: On
Bits 4 to 7: Communication mode used
      Bit 7 6 5 4 Setting
         0 0 0 0 Normal
         0 0 0 1 Confidential
         0 0 1 0 Polling
         0 0 1 1 Transfer
         0 1 0 0 Forwarding
         0 1 0 1 Automatic Service Call
      Other settings - Not used
```

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

37th byte - Communication mode #2

Bit 0: Tx or Rx 0: Tx, 1: Rx

Bit 1: Reduction in Tx 0: Not reduced, 1: Reduced

Bit 2: Batch transmission

0: Not used, 1: Used

0: Not used, 1: Used

0: Not used, 1: Used

0: ADF, 1: Memory

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

38th byte - Number of errors during communication (Hex)

39th to 41st byte - 1st error code and page number where the error occurred

39th byte - Page number where the error occurred (Hex)

40th byte - Error code (low - BCD) 41st byte - Error code (high - BCD)

42nd to 44th byte - 2nd error code and page number where the error occurred 45th to 47th byte - 3rd error code and page number where the error occurred 48th to 50th byte - 4th error code and page number where the error occurred 51tst to 53rd byte - 5th error code and page number where the error occurred

F80006 to 8000F(H) - ROM part number and suffix (ASCII)



5. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSMENT

5.12. IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

The following RAM addresses are different from the FX6.

5.12.2 Scanner Parameters

Margins

Parameter	Description	RAM address
L1	Scanning top margin	8002B4 to 8002B5(H)
L3	Scanning bottom margin	8002B6 to 8002B7(H)

5.12.3. Printer Parameters

Margins

Parameter	Description	RAM address
W1	Print left margin	800388(H): Standard cassette
		800389(H): Optional PFU
		80038A(H): 100-sheet cassette
		80038B(H): Bypass feeder
L1	Print top margin	800383(H): Standard cassette
		800384(H): Optional PFU
		800385(H): 100-sheet cassette
		800386(H): Bypass feeder
L3	Print bottom margin	800380(H): Only adjustable in bypass feed mode

TECHNICAL BULLETIN

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

6.4. ERROR CODES

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-70	V.8 sequence (TX/RX) - modulation mode was not determined after a CM/JM exchange	Check the line connection. Check for line noise.
0-74	V.8 sequence (TX) - fallback to T.30 protocol after transmitting CI	Check the connection between the NCU and the FDU.
0-75	V.8 sequence (RX) - fallback to T.30 protocol after receiving CI	The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
0-76	V.8 sequence (TX) - JM not detected and fallback to T.30 protocol	Adjust the TX level.
0-77	V.8 sequence (RX) - CJ not detected and fallback to T.30 protocol	
0-79	V.8 sequence (RX) - CI detected while waiting for a V.21 signal	
0-80	V.34 communication - time out during line probing	
0-81	V.34 communication - time out during equalizer training	
0-82	V.34 communication - time out during the control channel start-up sequence (Phase 4)	
0-83	V.34 communication - time out during the phase D control channel start-up sequence	
0-84	V.34 communication - error detected in the phase B control channel	
0-85	V.34 communication - error detected in the phase D control channel	
0-86	V.34 communication - a data rate which cannot be determined from the symbol rate is selected	
0-87	V.34 communication - modem status goes back to the control channel before receiving RCP	
0-88	V.34 ECM - PPR received 9 times (TX) or PPR transmitted 9 times (RX)	



7. Parts Catalog

The following parts for the FR6 are different from the FX6.

Index	FX6	FR6	Description	Used in common
3-2	H5164040	H5264040	Cover - PIF	FX6Mk2
3-3	H5164045	H5264045	Cover - Rear 2	FX6Mk2
3-9	H5272040	H5522042	Laser Plotter Unit	
3-10	H5166122	H5526000	PCB - FCE - FR6 USA	
3-11	H5166083	H5526050	PCB - FDU - FR6 USA	
3-12	54886020	54886030	PCB - NCU - USA	
3-	H5168600	H5528600	Operator's Manual - FR6 - Ricoh	
		H5528630	Operator's Manual - FR6 - Savin	
		H5528620	Operator's Manual - FR6 - NRG	
3-		H5163159	PFU Bracket	FX6Mk2
3-		H5223102	Spacer - FCE	LSO Mk2
7-2	H5164241	H5524220	Operation Panel Ass'y - FR6 - USA	
		H5524300	LCD Decal - Ricoh	
		H5524301	LCD Decal - Savin	
		H5524302	LCD Decal - Gestetner	
		H5524303	LCD Decal - Nashua	
7-4	H5165306	H5525321	Harness - OPU	
7-20	H5151355	H5521355	Separation Pad Ass'y	
7-24	H5164303	H5524309	Operation Panel Sheet	
9-15	H5164066	H5261066	Contact Image Sensor - B4	FX6Mk2
9-23	H5265310	H5525326	Harness - Image Sensor	
11-11	H5165302	H5525322	Harness - LDDR	
11-12	H5215061	H5525040	Polygon Mirror Motor	
11-13	H5215321	H5525310	Harness - Polygon Motor	
11-16	H5152715	H5522715	Laser Diode Unit	
17-16	H5165319	H5515316	Harness - Interlock SW	
19-2	H5163342	H5523342	FDU Base	
19-30	H5155085	H5525320	Harness - 100 sheets cassette	
19-36		H5153693	Positioning Pin (for the PFU)	FX4
21-5	H5163407	H5163401	Cassette Base - Universal	FX6Mk2

RIGON

21-28		H5163430	Paper Size Indicator - LG	FX6Mk2
21-33	H5163583	H5513584	Decal - Bypass Feed	
21-42	H5163465	H5153465	Support Plate - End Fence (FX4)	FX4
21-		H5153466	Plastic Rivet	FX4
21-		H5164088	Cassette Cover	FX6Mk2
3-33	H5165308	Not used	Driver Harness	
3-34	H5165316	Not used	Harness - Paper Feed Motor	
3-35	H5165309	Not used	Harness - TX Motor	
3-36	H5165313	Not used	Harness - Main Motor	
3-38	H5165322	Not used	Relay Harness - Fusing Unit	
3-39	H5165301	Not used	Harness - Paper Size	
		H5515312	Harness - Main Motor (Quench/Fusing Fan)	
		H5515341	Harness - Paper Feed Unit	
		H5525313	Harness - Drive (Ozone Fan/Thermistor/Speaker)	
		H5525323	Harness - Stepper Motor (ADF Motor/Paper Feed Motor)	
		H5525325	Harness - Fusing Exit (Fusing Exit/Cassette Size SN)	
		H5525327	Harness - Mech. Counter	



8. Product Information

1. Main Frame

Model Code	Model Name	Product Code	Serial #	Note
FR6	FAX 3800L Gestetner 9867 Savin 3685	H552-20	M26 y mm 00001	

2. Options

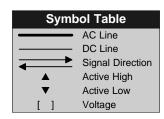
Items	Model Name	Product Code	Note
100-sheet Cassette	Paper Cassette Type 100	H111-03	
Paper Feed Unit	Paper Feed Unit Type 140F	H110-43	Used in common
1 MB Memory Card	Fax Expansion Type 10	H130-80	with the current F
2 MB Memory Card	Fax Expansion Type 20	H130-81	series
4 MB Memory Card	Fax Expansion Type 40	H130-82	
PCFE	TBA	H144-44	

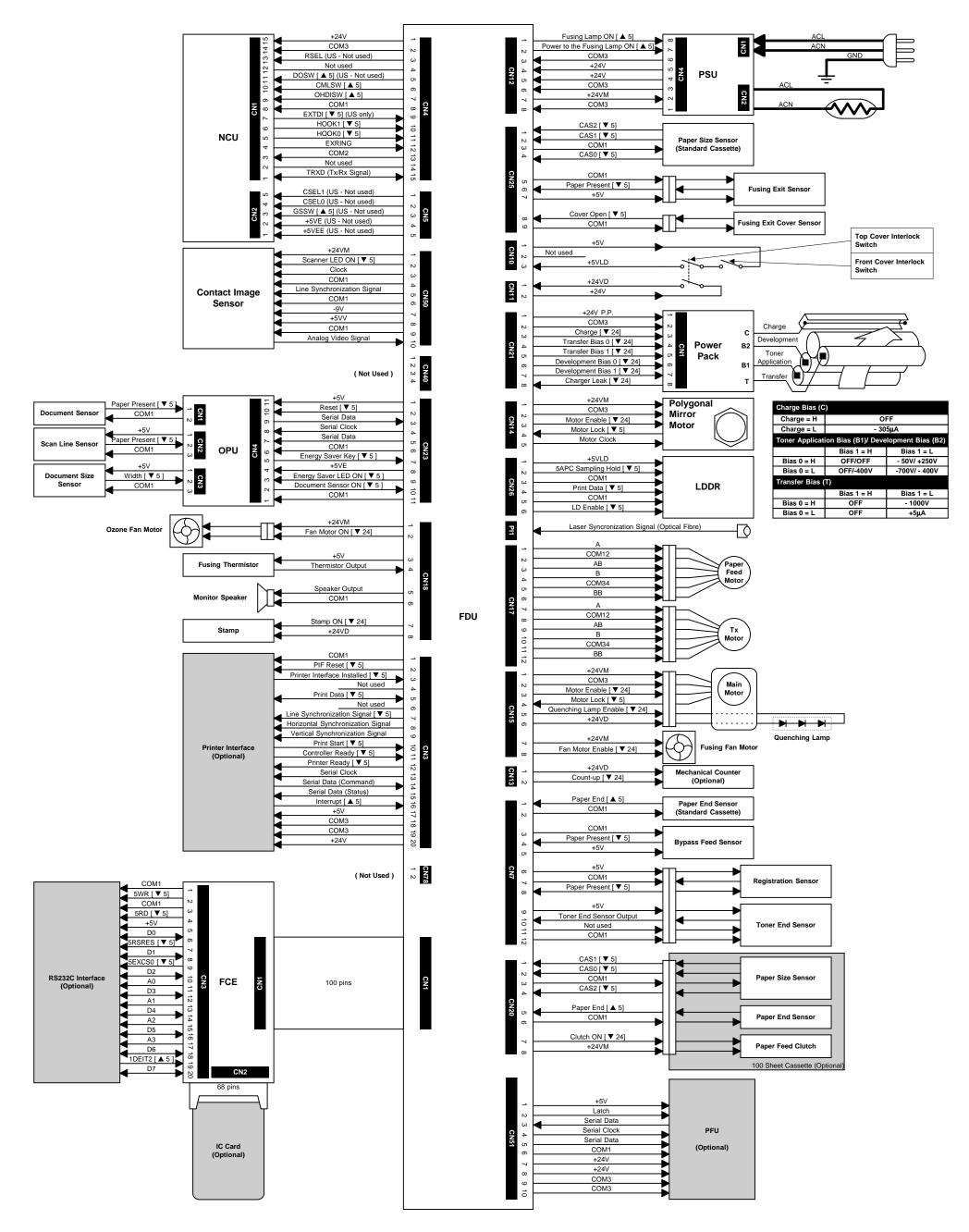
3. Supplies

Items	Model Name	Product Code	Note
Toner (CTM)	Toner Cassette Type 150		
Drum	Photoconductor Type 100		
Stamp	Marker Type 30	H923-02	

Point-to-Point Diagram Model:FR6 (FAX3800L)

Issued: October 1st, 1997 Revision 1.0 Subject to change







PARTS CATALOG

FOR
RICOH FAX2700L
[North America]

RICOH COMPANY, LTD.

1	May 19th, 1995	First edition

PARTS CATALOG

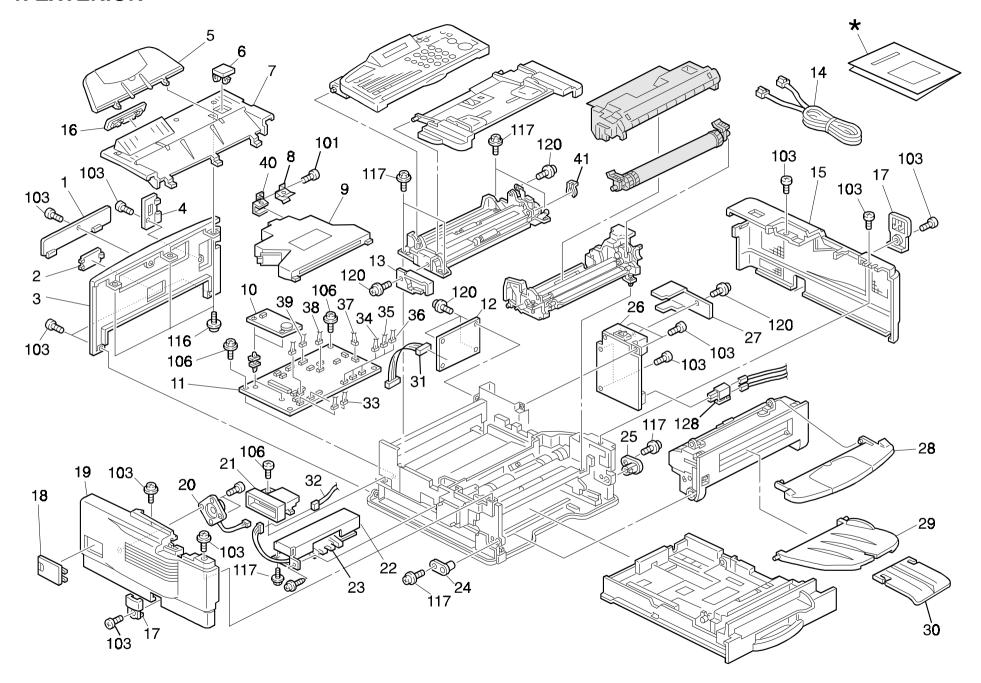
INTRODUCTION

This chapter instructs you the numbers and names of this parts on this machine.

INDEX to PARTS CATALOG

Section 1.Part Location and List		
1.Exterior	1-	2
2.ADF (Lower Unit)	1-	6
3.Opration Panel / ADF (Upper Unit)	1-	4
4.Scanner		
5.Laser Unit	1-1	10
6.Development		
7.Fusing		
8.Main Frame 1	1-1	16
9.Main Frame 2		
10.250 Sheet Cassette		
11.100 Sheet Cassette (Optional)	1-2	22
Section 2.Parts Index	2-	1

1. EXTERIOR

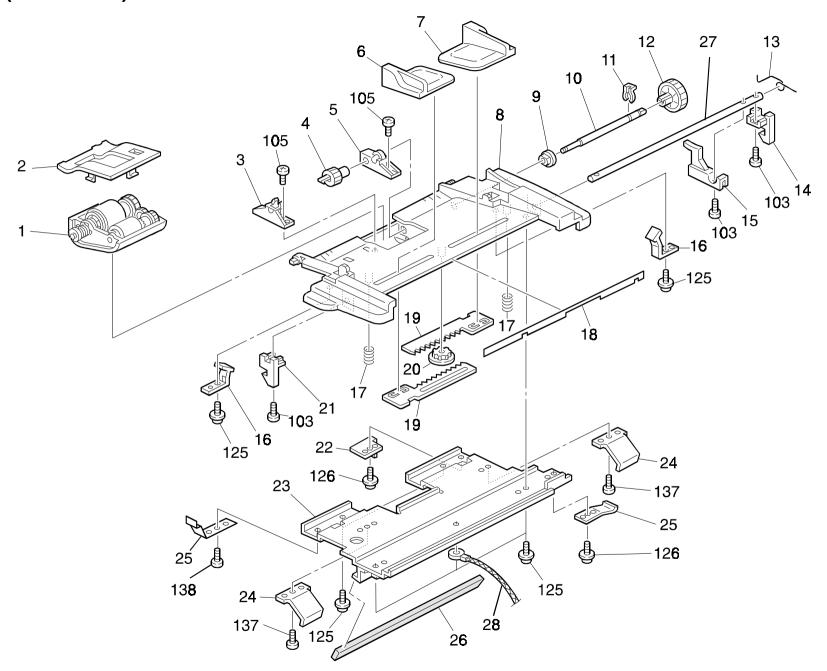


1.EXTERIOR

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
*	H516 8600	Operator's Manual - FX6 - US	
1	H516 4046	Cover - PIF - 2	
2	H516 4040	Cover - PIF	
3	H516 4045	Cover - Rear - 2	
4	H516 4047	Cover - NCU - E	
5	H516 4034	Document Tray	
6	H516 4026	Cover - Counter	
7	H516 4068	Cover - Rear - 1	
8	H515 2724	Clip - Laser Uni	
9	H521 2040	Laser Protter Ur	
10	H516 6002	PCB - FCE - FX6 - US	1
11	H516 6003	PCB - FDU - FX6 - US	
12	5488 6020	PCB - NCU - U	,
13	H516 1058	Cover - Scanner - Left	
14	H081 5700	Modular Cord - T	
15	H516 4070	Cover - Right	
16	H516 4048	Cover - 232C	
17	H516 4043	Cover - Connector	
18	H516 4023	Cover - IC Memory Card	
19	H516 4020	Cover - Left	
20	H516 5031	Monitor Speake =	
21	H516 4049	Guide - IC Card	
22	H515 3130	Cover - Power k	
23	H516 5047	Power Supply - k - A4	
24	H515 3116	Fulcrum - Fusin	
25	H521 3164	Pin - Right Fulcrum	
26	H521 5401	PSU - L30 - US	
27	H516 3134	Cover - PSU	
28	H516 4028	Document Table	
29	H516 4032	Copy Tray - A4	
30	H516 4033	Copy Tray Exte	
31	H521 5309	Harness - NCU	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
32	H516 5318	Harness - Power Pack	
33	H516 5308	Driver Harness	
34	H516 5316	Harness - Paper Feed Motor	
35	H516 5309	Harness - TX Motor	
36	H516 5313	Harness - Main Motor ETC.	
37	H521 5322	Harness - PSU	
38	H516 5322	Relay Harness - Fusing Unit	
39	H516 5301	Harness - Paper Size	
40	H515 2734	Bracket - Base	
41	G011 3275	Snap Ring	

2. ADF (Lower Unit)

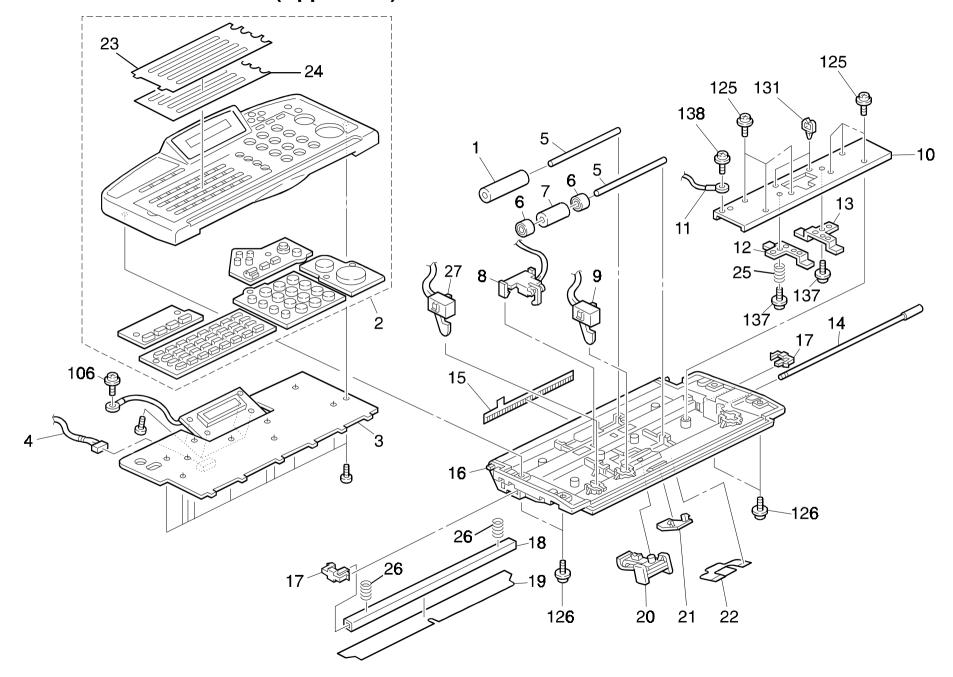


2.ADF (Lower Unit)

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H515 1204	ADF Feeder Unit	
2	H515 1292	Cover - ADF	
3	H515 1291	Plumber Block - ADF Roller - Left	
4	H515 1285	Gear - Document Feed	
5	H515 1290	Plumber Block - ADF Roller - Right	
6	H515 1307	Guide - Original - Left	
7	H515 1306	Guide - Original - Right	
8	H515 1251	Guide Plate - ADF - Lower	
9	H053 1600	Bushing - M6 : CMFE	
10	H515 1284	Shaft - Document Feed	
11	5447 2681	Snap Ring	
12	H516 1257	Idler Gear - Feed	
13	H515 1295	Sping - Lock	
14	H515 1304	Hook - Cover Lock - Right	
15	H515 1296	Lever - Lock Release	
16	H515 1297	Lock Lever - Op ion Panel	
17	H515 1298	Spring Plate - C	
18	H516 1263	Seal - Fusing 2	
19	H515 1282	Rack Gear - Do nent Guide	
20	H515 1283	Pinion Gear - Decument Guide	
21	H515 1305	Hook - Cover Lock - Left	
22	H515 1335	Ground Plate - ADF - Lower 2	
23	H515 1318	Bracket - Top Cover	
24	H515 2831	Spring Plate - CTM	
25	H515 1337	Grownding Wire Holder	
26	H515 1321	Sponge - Fusing 1	
27	H515 1294	Shaft - Lock	
28	H515 5324	Grounding Wire	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

3. OPRATION PANEL / ADF (Upper Unit)

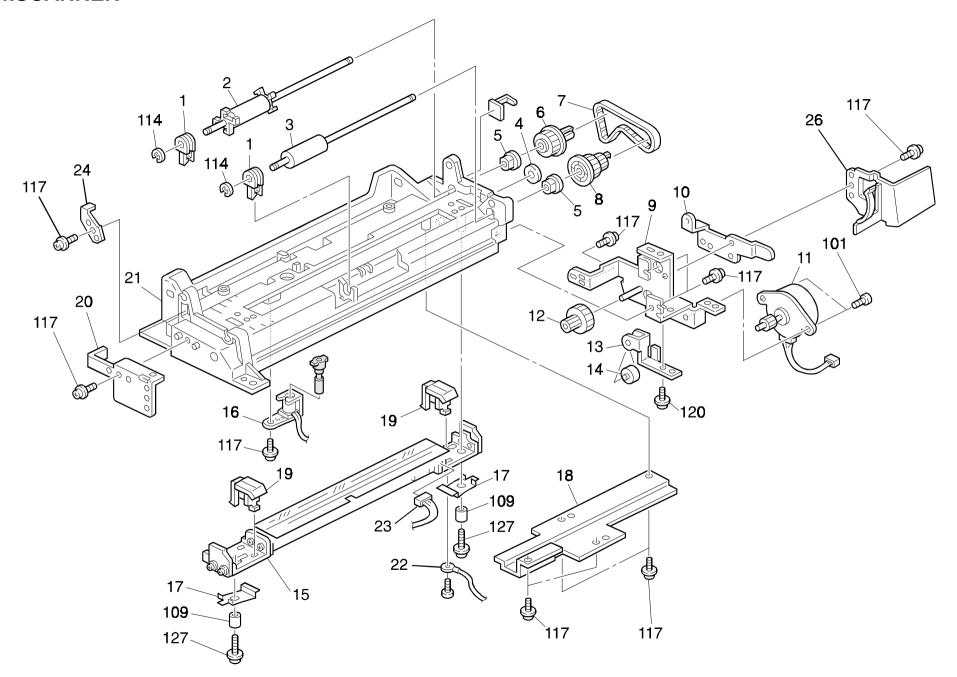


3.OPRATION PANEL / ADF (Upper Unit)

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H081 1147	Pressure Roller Assy	
2	H516 4221	Cover - Operation Panel - Fx6	
3	H516 6020	PCB - OPU - FX6	
4	H516 5306	Harness - OPU	
5	H515 1301	Shaft - Pressure Roller	
6	H515 1313	Sponge Collar - R1	
7	H515 1312	Pressure Roller - R1	
8	H515 5003	Original Sensor - S2	
9	H515 5002	Original Sensor - S1	
10	H515 1263	Bracket - Grounding	
11	H515 5325	Grounding Wire	
12	H515 1323	Spring Plate - R 2 - Left	
13	H515 1324	Spring Plate - R1/R2 - Right	
14	H515 1271	Shaft - Separetion Pressure	
15	H515 1267	Grounding Plate	
16	H515 1250	ADF Guide Plate - Upper	
17	H515 1277	Clip - Base - Shading Plate	
18	H515 1279	Base - Shading Plate	
19	H515 1278	Shading Plate	
20	H515 1205	Separation Plate: s'y	
21	H515 1293	Pressure Plate - ckup	
22	H515 1331	Mylar - ADF	
23	H516 4322	Cover - Quick Dial Keys	
24	H516 4303	Shield - Na - Key Switch	
25	H515 1336	Spring	
26	H515 1303	Spring - Shading Plate	
27	H515 5004	Original Sensor - S3	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

4.SCANNER

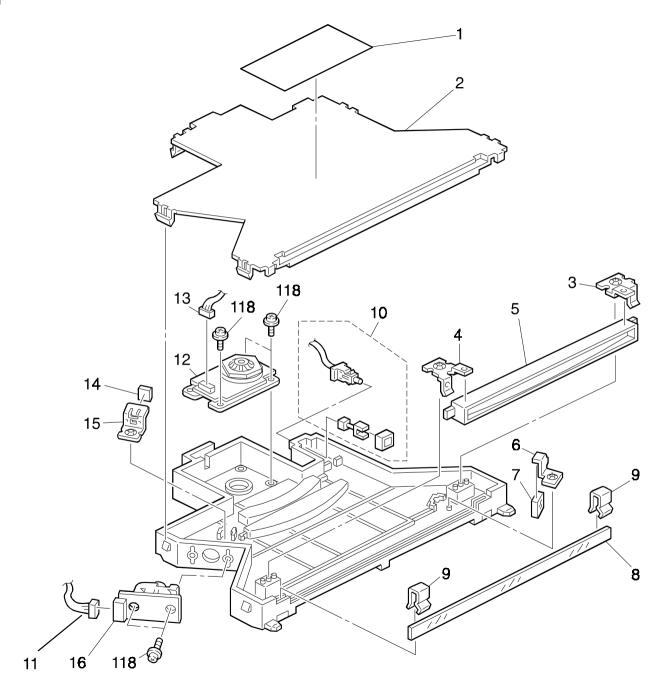


4.SCANNER

PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
H515 1062	Bushing - R1/R2 Rollers	
H516 1251	R2 Roller	
H516 1250	R1 Roller	
H516 1065	Spacer - TX Idler Gear	
H053 1600	Bushing - M6 : CMFE	
H515 1266	Pulley - R2 Roller	
H516 1253	Timing Belt - TX	
H516 1254	Pulley - R2 Roller	
H516 1258	Bracket - TX Motor	
H516 1059	Ground Plate anner	
H516 5000	Stepper Motor X 24VDC 18.7W	
H516 1255	Idler Gear - TX	
H516 1261	Spring Plate - Belt Tensioning	
H516 1262	Roller - Belt Tensioning	
H516 1066	Contact Image Sensor - A4	
H515 5005	Original Sensq=64	
H516 1064	Spring Plate -	
H516 1055	Bracket - R1 Roller	
H516 1062	Spacer - Image Sensor	
H516 1054	Bracket	
H516 1050	Scanner Base	
H516 5012	Ground Wire - ge Sensor	
H516 5304	Harness - Imag ensor	
H516 1068	Bracket - Operation Panel	
H516 1063	Image Sensor {== ≥t	
H516 1057	Drive Cover	
	H516 1251 H516 1250 H516 1065 H053 1600 H515 1266 H516 1253 H516 1254 H516 1258 H516 1059 H516 5000 H516 1261 H516 1261 H516 1262 H516 1066 H515 5005 H516 1064 H516 1055 H516 1062 H516 1054 H516 1050 H516 5012 H516 5304 H516 1068 H516 1068	H516 1251 R2 Roller H516 1250 R1 Roller H516 1065 Spacer - TX Idler Gear H053 1600 Bushing - M6 : CMFE H515 1266 Pulley - R2 Roller H516 1253 Timing Belt - TX H516 1254 Pulley - R2 Roller H516 1258 Bracket - TX Motor Ground Plate anner H516 5000 Stepper Motor X 24VDC 18.7W H516 1255 Idler Gear - TX H516 1261 Spring Plate - Belt Tensioning H516 1262 Roller - Belt Tensioning H516 1066 Contact Image Sensor - A4 H515 5005 Original Sensor H516 1064 Spring Plate - Tyge Sensor H516 1065 Bracket - R1 Roller Spacer - Image Sensor H516 1050 Scanner Base H516 5012 Ground Wire - Tyge Sensor H516 5304 Harness - Image Sensor Bracket - Operation Panel Image Sensor □ Spacer - Image Sensor

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

5. LASER UNIT

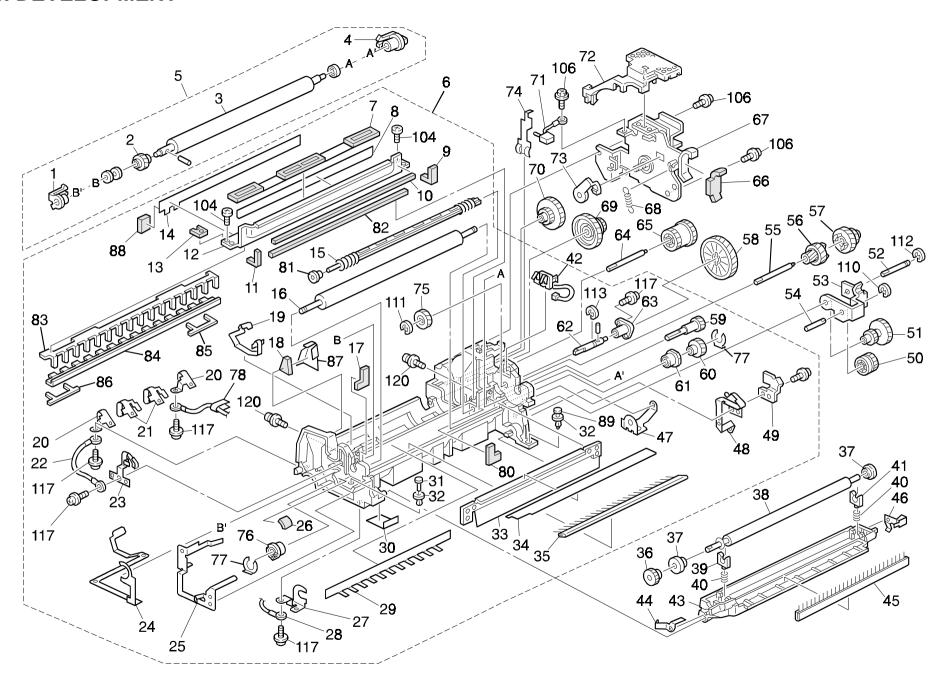


5.LASER UNIT

PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
H081 4052	Decal - Laser	
H515 2714	Cover - Laser Unit	
H515 2720	Spring Plate - BTL - Right	
H515 2719	Spring Plate - BTL - Left	
H515 2725	Cylindrical Lens - Laser	
H515 2721	Spring Plate - N _ r - Laser Sync.	
H515 2711	Mirror - Synchromzation	
H515 2712	Laser Exposure Glass	
H515 2723	Spring Plate - Exposure Glass	
H515 2717	Laser Sync.Detector	
H516 5302	Harness - LDDR	
H521 5061	Polygonal Motor - DC24V;0.3A	
H521 5321	Harness - Mirror tor	
H515 2725	Cylindrical Lens aser	
H515 2722	Spring Plate - Lens - Laser	
H515 2715	Laser Diode Unit	
	H081 4052 H515 2714 H515 2720 H515 2719 H515 2725 H515 2721 H515 2711 H515 2712 H515 2723 H515 2717 H516 5302 H521 5061 H521 5321 H515 2725 H515 2725	H081 4052 Decal - Laser H515 2714 Cover - Laser Unit H515 2720 Spring Plate - BTL - Right H515 2719 Cylindrical Lens - Laser H515 2721 Spring Plate - N r - Laser Sync. H515 2721 Mirror - Synchronization H515 2712 Laser Exposure Glass H515 2723 Spring Plate - Exposure Glass H515 2717 Laser Sync.Detector H516 5302 Harness - LDDR H521 5061 Polygonal Motor - DC24V;0.3A H521 5321 Harness - Mirror H515 2722 Spring Plate - Lens - Laser

11	NDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

6. DEVELOPMENT



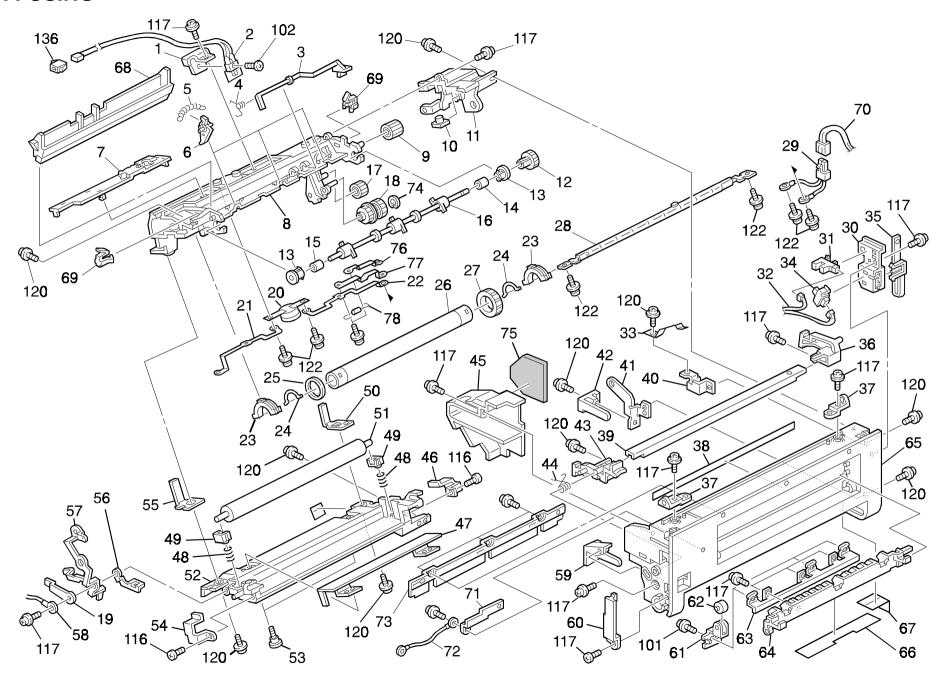
6.DEVELOPMENT

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H515 2414	Bearing - Dvlp. Roller - Left	<u>=</u> 1
2	H515 2451	Gear <u>≡</u>	
3	H516 2519	Rubber Roller - [] slopment - A4	
4	H515 2415	Bearing - Dvlp. Roller - Right	
5	H516 2405	Rubber Roller Ass'y - DVLP -B4	
6	H516 2401	Development Unit - A4	
7	H516 2500	Toner Duct - A4	
8	H516 2524	Film - Toner Duct - A4	
9	H515 2506	Seal - Duct - S	
10	H516 2505	Toner Duct Shield - A4 - 2	
11	H515 2506	Seal - Duct - S	
12	H516 2432	Cover - Toner Hopper - A4	
13	H515 2536	Seal - Development - C	
14	H516 2549	Seal - Toner Duct - Lower - A4	
15	H516 2544	Toner Agitator - Development	
16	H516 2516	Magnet Roller - Development - A4	
17	H515 2502	Seal - Roller	
18	H515 2535	Seal - B	
19	H515 2474	Terminal Plate - Sevelopment - L	
20	H515 2530	Terminal Plate - B	
21	H515 2481	Terminal Plate - A	
22	H516 5045	Cable - Charge Bias - A4	
23	H515 2478	Terminal Plate - Charge - M	
24	H516 2475	Terminal - Rubber Roller - A4	
25	H515 2473	Terminal Plate - Development - S	
26	H515 2534	Seal - Development - A	
27	H515 2471	Terminal Plate - Transfer - L	
28	H516 5046	Cable - Transfer Bias - A4	
29	H516 2548	Film - Toner Ho	
30	H516 2555	Lower Seal	
31	H515 2487	Stopper - Pin	
32	H515 2488	Stopper - Receptacle	

	INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
	33	H516 2412	Toner Metering Blade - A4	
	34	H516 2528	Sheield - Rubbe Iller - A4	
	35	H516 2518	Antistatic Brush Roller - A4	
	36	H515 2452	Gear - Transfer Roller	
	3	H515 2461	Transfer Roller	
Ξ	3 🖵	H516 2419	Transfer Roller -	
J	39	H515 2455	Holder - Transfe ler - Left	
	40	H515 2485	Spring - Transfe r D ller	
	41	H515 2456	Holder - Transfe ller - Right	
	42	H515 2417	Terminal - Quenching Lamp	
	43	H516 2431	Guide - Transfer = ler - A4	
	44	H515 2469	Terminal Plate - 📆nsfer - S	
	45	H516 2460	Antistatic Brush paration - A4	
	46	H515 2472	Terminal Plate - 🗖 aration	
	47	H515 2468	Terminal Plate - Ground	
	48	H515 2482	Terminal Plate - OPC Drum	
	49	H515 2543	Holder - Terminal Plate - OPC Drum	
	50	H515 2493	Drive Gear - Fusing	
	51	H515 2450	Idler Gear 6	
	52	H515 2467	Shaft - Idler 6	
	53	H515 2492	Bracket - Fusing Drive Gear	
	54	H515 2494	Shaft - Drive Gear - Fusing	
	55	H515 2462	Shaft - Idler 1	
	56	H515 2443	Idler Gear 1 - Small	
	57	H515 2444	Idler Gear 1 - Large	
	58	H515 2445	Idler Gear 2 - Large	
	59	H515 2413	Gear - Agitator	
	60	H515 2442	Gear - MAG. Roller	
	61	H515 2411	Bearing - Mag. Roller - Right	
	62	H515 2463	Shaft - Idler 2	
	63	H515 2457	Bushing - Idler 2 - Large	
	64	H515 2466	Shaft - Idler 5	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note	INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
65	H515 2449	Idler Gear 5		1			
66	H515 2541	Deal - Shutter Guide					
67	H515 2416	Main Motor Ass'y - DC24V;16.1W					
68	H515 2495	Spring - Bracket - Fusing Drive					
69	H515 2447	Idler Gear 3					
70	H515 2448	Idler Gear 4					
71	H516 5048	Zenor Diode - 732V:HVRD					
72	H515 2491	Inner Cover - Development					
73	H515 2458	Bushing - Idler 2 - Small					
74	H515 2496	Terminal Plate - Grid					
75	H515 2446	Drive Gear - Opc Drum					
76	H515 2410	Bearing - Mag. Roller - Left					
77	H515 2542	Stopper - Bearing - M6					
78	H515 2547	Holder - Harnet					
80	H515 2552	Roller Seal - R					
81	H081 2438	Shaft - Agitator					
82	H516 2501	Toner Duct Shield - A4 - 1					
83	H516 2561	Diffusion Plate - L					
84	H516 2564	Diffusion Plate Holder					
85	H516 2562	Diffusion Plate - S1					
86	H516 2563	Diffusion Plate - S2					
87	H515 5396	Seal Sheet =					
88	H515 2537	Seal Sheet Seal - Development - D					
89	H515 2554	Stopper Pin					
		=					

7. FUSING



7.FUSING

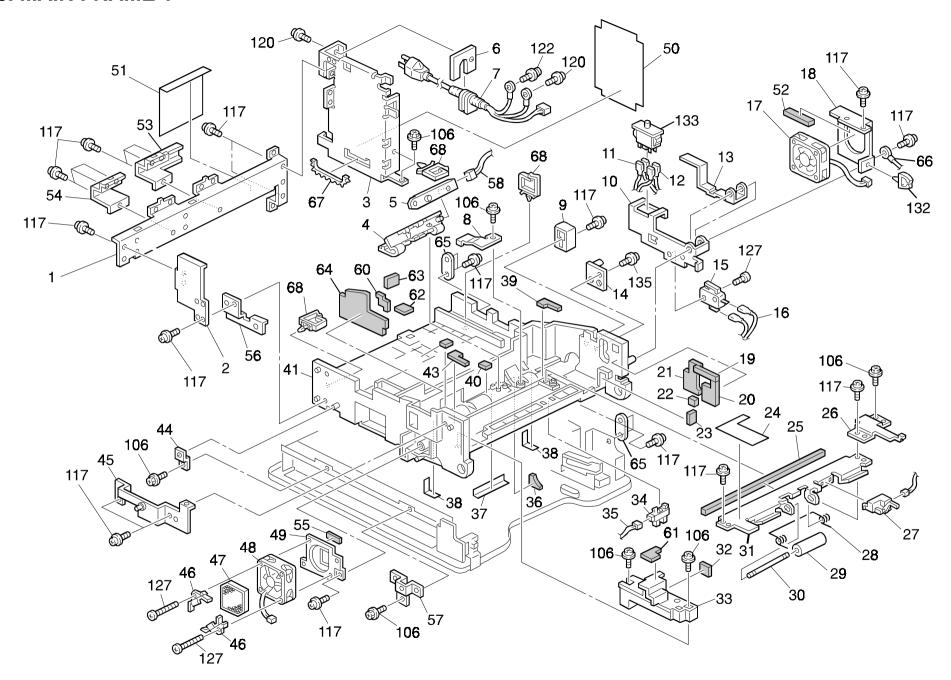
INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H515 2143	Holder - Thermistor	
2	H515 5015	Thermistor - Fusing	
3	H515 2149	Actuator - Fusing Exit Sensor	
4	H515 2161	Spring - Sensor Actuator	
5	H515 2153	Spring - Hot Roller Stripper	
6	H515 2181	Separation Hook - Fusing	
7	H516 2159	Cover - Thermistor	
8	H516 2112	Upper Case - Fusing - A4	
9	H515 2127	Idler Gear - Z18	
10	H515 2167	Holder - Fusing Lamp	
11	H515 2119	Cover - Gear	
12	H515 2128	Gear - Fusing Exit Roller	
13	H515 2139	Bushing - Fusing Exit Roller	
14	H515 2166	Roller - Exit Role	
15	H516 2127	Spacer - Fusing tit Roller - Left	
16	H516 2117	Fusing Exit Roller - A4	
17	H515 2125	Idler Gear - Z17	
18	H515 2124	Idler Gear - Z22-18	
19	H515 2189	Grounding Plate Holder	
20	H515 5017	Thermostat - Fusing	
21	H516 2146	Terminal Plate - Thermostat - 2	
22	H515 2145	Terminal Plate - Thermostat - 1	
23	H515 2137	Bearing - Hot Roller	
24	H515 2160	Stopper - Hot Roller	
25	H515 2141	Spacer - Hot Roller	
26	H516 2110	Roller - Fusing - A4	
27	H515 2126	Gear - Hot Roller	
28	H516 5016	Heater - A4 - 115V	
29	H515 5022	Harness - Fusing Lamp	
30	H515 2155	Fusing Right Cover	
31	AW02 0021	Photointerruptor - 175487-3	
32	H521 5312	Harness - Fusing Sensors	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
33	H515 2179	Cover - Connector	
34	H515 5018	Cover Switch - Fusing Exit	
35	H516 2198	Stopper - Fusing	
36	H515 2134	Lock Lever - Right	
37	H516 2119	Bracket - Table - Original	
38	H516 2152	Antistatic Brush - Fusing - A4	
39	H515 2135	Shaft - Lock Lever	
40	H515 2178	Bracket - Lamp Connector	
41	H515 2180	Bracket - Idler Gear	
42	H515 2157	Fusing Inner Cover - Right	
43	H515 2133	Lever - Lock - Left	
44	H515 2136	Spring - Lock Lever	
45	H516 2121	Inner Cover - A4	
46	H515 2176	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Right	
47	H516 2173	Guide - Fusing - A4	
48	H515 2154	Spring - Pressu = oller	
49	H515 2169	Bearing - Press Roller	
50	H515 2163	Spring Plate - Right	
51	H516 2111	Pressure Roller = 1	
52	H516 2116	Lower Case - Fusing - A4	
53	H515 2182	Stepped Screw	
54	H515 2177	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Left	
55	H515 2164	Spring Plate - Left	
56	H515 2171	Spring Plate - Pressure Roller	
57	H515 2156	Ground Plate - Hot Roller	
58	H515 5024	Ground Wire - Fusing	
59	H515 2158	Fusing Inner Cover - Left	
60	H515 2165	Fusing Left Cover	
61	H515 2121	Spring Plate - Fusing Exit	
62	H515 2122	Fusing Exit Roller	
63	H516 2126	Bracket - Fusing - A4	
64	H516 2120	Cover - Exit - A4	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
65	H516 2118	Cover - Front - F16 - A4	
66	H515 2184	Decal - Warning	
68	H516 2150	Cleaning Pad - Fusing	
69	H515 2168	Lock Spring - Cleaning Pad	
70	H521 5326	Heater Relay Harness	
71	H516 2135	Grounding Plate - A4	
72	H516 5012	Ground Wire - Image Sensor	
73	H516 2130	Guide Plate - Fusing Exit - A4	
74	H515 3543	Retaining Ring - M4	
75	H516 2136	CushionFASF	
76	H516 2134	Terminal Plate - Thermofuse - 2	
77	H516 2133	Terminal Plate - Thermofuse - 1	
78	H516 5018	Thermofuse	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

8. MAIN FRAME 1



8.MAIN FRAME 1

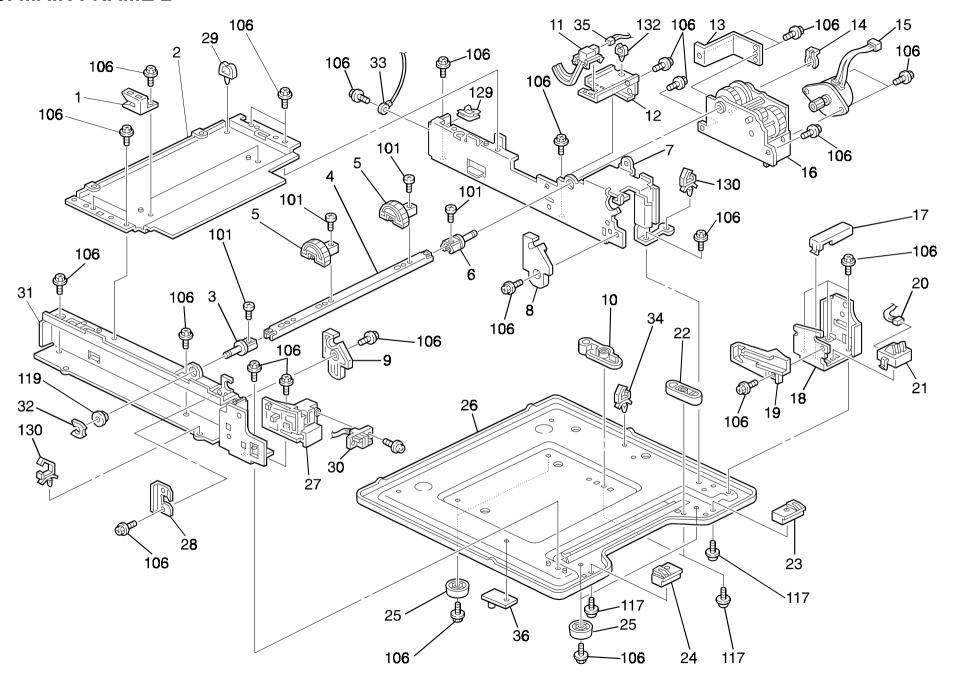
INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H516 3131	Bracket - Rear =	
2	H516 3133	Bracket - Rear - Left	
3	H516 3132	Bracket - PSU	
4	H516 3146	Bracket - Toner End Sensor	
5	H515 5050	Toner End Sensor	
6	H516 3128	Bracket - Cord Clamper	
7	H521 5327	Power Cord - 115V	
8	H521 3144	Harness Clamp	
9	H515 3114	Slider - Interlock SW.	
10	H515 3111	Bracket - Interlock SW.	
11	H516 5315	Harness - Interlock SW 24V	
12	H521 5324	Relay Harness - Interlock - 5V	
13	H515 3112	Actuator - Interlock SW.	<u> </u>
14	H516 3137	Bracket - Top Cover Locking - Right	Ę
15	H081 5043	Interlock Switch - LD	
16	H516 5319	Harness - Interlock SW 5V	
17	H516 5041	Cooling Fan Motor - DC24V;3.6W	
18	H516 3139	Bracket - Cooling Fan	
19	H521 3147	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 1	
20	H521 3148	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 2	
21	H521 3149	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 3	
22	H521 3150	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 4	
22	H516 3152	Sponge - 5	
23	H521 3145	Sponge - Lock - Tht	
24	H516 3380	Mylar - Bracket - Registration	
25	H521 3379	Sponge - Bracket - Pressure Roller	
26	H516 3376	Ground Plate - Bracket - Regist.	
27	H521 5054	Registration Sensor	
28	H516 3358	Spring - Pressure Roller	
29	H521 3340	Pressure Roller - Registration	
30	H516 3434	Shaft - Pressure Roller	
31	H516 3345	Bracket - Pressure Roller	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
32	H516 3152	Sponge - 5	
33	H516 3116	Spacer - Development Unit - A4	
34	AW02 0021	Photointerruptor - 175487-3	
35	H516 5311	Sensor Harness	
36	H521 3160	Sponge - Base - tom	
37	H521 3162	Seal - Base - Bo	
38	H521 3161	Seal - Base - Bottom - 1	
39	H521 3157	Sponge - Registration - 2	
39 40	H515 2551	Seal - Duct - R	
40	H521 3159	Sponge - Power Pack - 2	
41	H515 3110	Base - Plotter	
42	H521 3158	Sponge - Power Pack - 1	
43	H521 3156	Sponge - Registration - 1	
44	H521 3352	Bracket - Plotter Base Connection	
45	H516 3135	Bracket - Top Cover Locking - Left	
46	H516 3141	Bracket - Ozone Filter	
47	H516 3142	Ozone Filter - 8	
48	H515 5041	Ozone Fan Motor - DC24V;1.44W	
49	H516 3140	Bracket - Ozone Fan	
50	H516 3155	Insulating Sheet - PSU	
51	H516 3156	Insulating Sheet - NCU	
52	H516 3153	Sponge - Cushion - Cooling Fan	
53	H516 3144	Bracket - PIF - 1	
54	H516 3145	Bracket - PIF - 2	
55	H516 3154	Sponge - Cushion - Ozone Fan	
56	H516 3129	Ground Plate - Left	
57	H515 2199	Front Fixing Plate	
58	H521 5310	Sensor Harness	
60	H516 3149	Sponge - 2	
61	H516 3150	Sponge - 3	
62	H516 3151	Sponge - 4	
63	H516 3148	Sponge - 1	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
64	H521 3153	Sponge - Base - Left - Middle	
65	H516 3384	Spring Plate - Lock	
66	H521 5042	Ground Wire - Lock - Front	
67	H516 3157	Bushing - 66	
68	H516 3147	Harness Clamper - Base	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note

9. MAIN FRAME 2

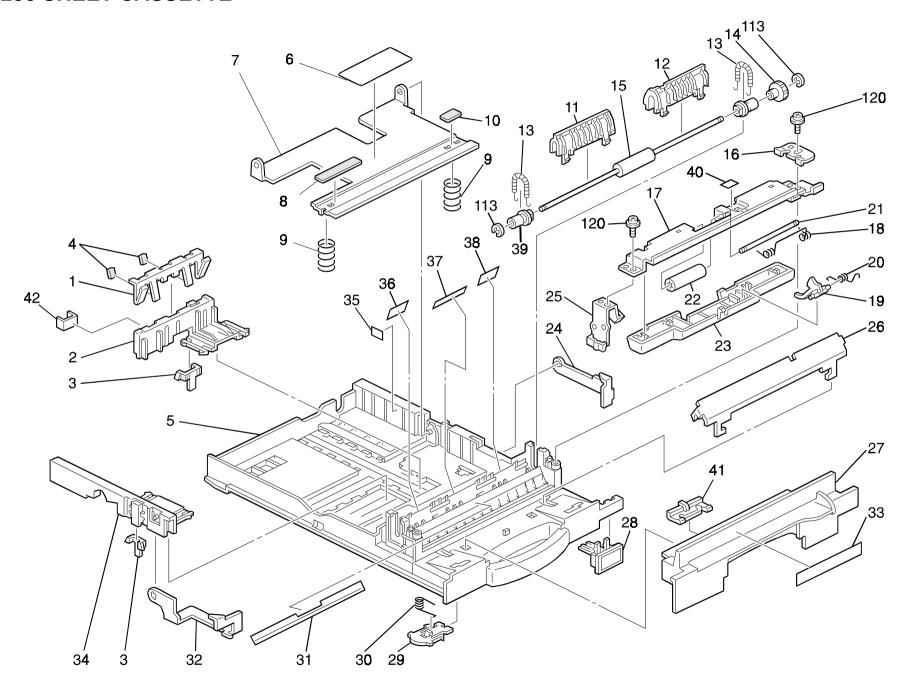


9.MAIN FRAME 2

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H515 3374	Holder - FDU	
2	H516 3342	Base - Main Board	
3	H516 3335	Shaft - Feed Roller - Left	
4	H516 3373	Stay - Feed Roller	
5	H516 3370	Paper Feed Roller	
6	H516 3372	Shaft - Feed Roller - Right	
7	H516 3322	Side Plate - Rig	
8	H516 3333	Lock - Cassette ight	
9	H516 3332	Lock - Cassette - Left	
10	H516 3331	Rail - Cassette - Rear	
11	H516 5050	Paper End Sensor	
12	H516 3341	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	
13	H516 3379	Ground Plate - Paper Feed Motor	
14	H006 2383	Snap Ring	
15	H516 5052	Stepper Motor-paper Feed 24VDC13W	
16	H516 3301	Gear Box - Paper Feed	
17	H516 3359	Cover - Harness - Paper Size Sensor	
18	H516 3346	Bracket - Paper Size Sensor	
19	H516 3320	Guide - 100 Sheet Cassette - Right	
20	H516 5301	Harness - Paper Size	
21	H515 5054	Paper Size Sensor	
22	H516 3330	Rail - Cassette - Front	
23	H516 3328	Spacer - Cassette Entrance - Right	
24	H516 3329	Spacer - Cassette Entrance - Left	
25	H516 3361	Rubber Foot	
26	H516 3316	Bottom Base	
27	H516 3319	Guide - 100 Sleet Cassette - Left	
28	H516 3344	Ground Plate - Registration Roller	
29	H020 1234	Cord Clamp =	
30	H515 5085	Harness - 100 Sneet Cassette	
31	H516 3326	Side Plate - Left	
32	H515 3544	E-ring - JR-E6	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
33	H516 5325	Grounding Wire - 190mm	
34	H516 3147	Harness Clamper - Base	

10. 250 SHEET CASSETTE

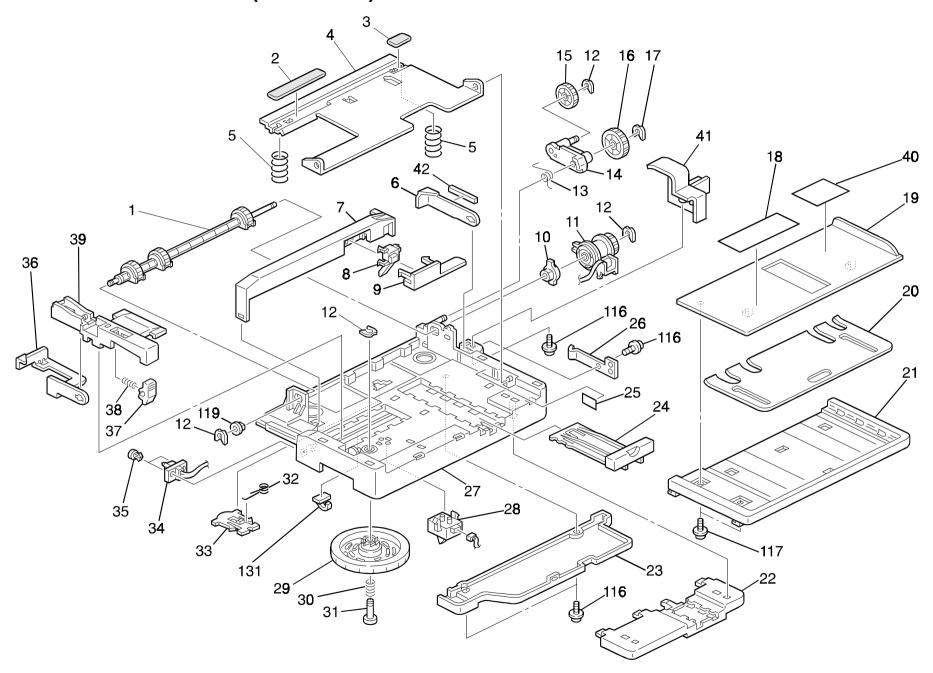


10.250 SHEET CASSETTE

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H516 3438	Spring Plate - End Fence	
2	H516 3414	End Fence - Cassette	
3	H516 3439	Stopper - Fence	
4	H516 3471	Sponge - End Fence	
5	H516 3407	Cassette Base - A4/LT	
5	H516 3401	Cassette Base - Universal	Universal
6	H516 3470	Decal - Paper Set - Cassette	
7	H516 3410	Bottom Plate - Cassette	
8	H516 3421	Friction Pad - Bottom Plate - Large	
9	H516 3450	Spring Bottom Plate	
10	H521 3419	Friction Pad - Bottom Plate - Small	
11	H516 3423	Paper Guide Plate - Regist Left	
12	H516 3424	Paper Guide Plate - Regist Right	
13	H516 3447	Spring - Registration Roller	
14	H516 3419	Gear - Registration Roller	
15	H516 3416	Registration Roller	
16	H516 3482	Spring Plate - Bracket -right	
17	H516 3462	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Cass.	
18	H516 3448	Spring - Pressure Roller	
19	H516 3435	Actuator - Bypass Feed Sensor	
20	H516 3449	Spring - Bypass Sensor Actuator	
21	H516 3434	Shaft - Pressure Roller	
22	H521 3340	Pressure Roller - Registration	
23	H516 3463	Guide - Pressure Roller - Cass.	
24	H516 3413	Separation Hook - Cassette - Right	
25	H516 3381	Ground Plate - Cassette - Left	
26	H516 3415	Paper Guide Plate - Bypass	
27	H516 3437	Manual Feed Table	
28	H516 3428	Paper Size Indicator - Letter	
28	H516 3430	Paper Size Indicator - LG	Universal
29	H516 3425	Lock - Bottom Plate	
30	H516 3426	Spring - Lock - Bottom Plate	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
31	H516 3444	Mylar - Paper Guide - 2	
32	H516 3411	Separation Hook - Cassette - Left	
33	H516 3583	Decal - Bypass Feed	
34	H516 3412	Side Fence - Cassette	
35	A048 6149	Decal - Manual Feed	
36	H516 3446	Mylar - Paper Guide - 4	
37	H516 3443	Mylar - Paper Guide - 1	
38	H516 3445	Mylar - Paper Guide - 3	
39	H516 3417	Bushing - Registration Roller	
41	H516 3469	Cover - Manual Feed Table	
42	H516 3465	Support Plate - Fence	
The Items	ı with "Universal"	ι in the Note columm are for the optional ι	ıniversal
cassetete.			

11. 100 SHEET CASSETTE (OPTIONAL)



11.100 SHEET CASSETTE (OPTIONAL)

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
1	H515 3557	Paper Feed Roller	
2	H515 3529	Friction Pad - Large	
3	H515 3530	Friction Pad - Small	
4	H515 3517	Bottom Plate - Cassette	
5	H516 3532	Spring - Bottom Plate	
6	H515 3524	Corner Separator - Right	
7	H515 3556	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	
8	H515 5076	Paper End Sen	
9	H515 3545	Cover - Paper End Sensor	
10	H515 3531	Bushing - Paper Feed Roller	
11	H515 5075	Paper Feed Clutch	
12	H515 3543	Retaining Ring - M4	
13	H515 3533	Spring - Gear A	
14	H515 3526	Bracket - Gear 📈	
15	H515 3528	Gear - Z26	
16	H515 3527	Gear - Z32	
17	H515 3544	E-ring - JR-E6	
18	H515 3555	Decal - Pape <mark>r Se</mark> t	
19	H515 3550	Cover - Bypa: =eed	
20	H515 3552	Bypass Feed Table Ass'y	
21	H515 3518	Cover - Cassette	
22	H515 3540	Paper Tray Extension	
23	H515 3546	Lower Cover	
24	H515 3522	End Fence	
25	H515 3554	Decal - Paper Limit	
26	H515 3539	Spring Plate - Lock	
27	H516 3510	Paper Tray - 10 = heet Cassette	
28	H515 5054	Paper Size Ser	
29	H515 3519	Paper Size Indicator	
30	H515 3535	Spring - Paper Size Indicator	
31	H515 3538	Shaft - Paper Size Indicator	
32	H516 3426	Spring - Lock - Bottom Plate	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
33	H516 3425	Lock - Bottom Plate	
34	H515 5080	Relay Harness Assembly	
35	H515 3542	Rivet	
36	H515 3523	Corner Separator - Left	
37	H515 3521	Knob - Side Fence	
38	H515 3534	Spring - Side Fence	
39	H515 3520	Side Fence	
40	H516 3581	Decal - By-pass Feed (100 Cassette)	
41	H515 3541	Gear Cover	
42	H515 3553	Stopper - Corner Separator	
		=	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
101	0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	
102	0313 0080B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x8	
103	0353 0080Z	Philips Trass Head Screw - M3x8	
104	0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
105	0433 0102B	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
106	0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	
107	0632 0100G	Pin - 2x10mm	
108	0633 0120G	Parallel Pin - 3x12	
109	0707 3050B	Bushing - 3x5mm	
110	0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	
111	0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	
112	0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	
113	0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	
114	0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	
115	0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	
116	0802 5205	Tapping Screw - M3x6	
117	0802 5206	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
118	0802 5230	Tapping Screw - M3x10	
119	0805 3386	Bushing - 8mm	
120	0951 3006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer-M3x6	
121	0951 3008B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer-M3x8	
122	0954 3006B	Screw - M3X6	
123	0957 3006B	Screw - M3X6	
124	0965 3006B	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer M3x6	
125	0965 3008B	Tapping Screw With Washer - M3x8	
126	0965 3010B	Tapping Screw With Flat WasherM3x6	
127	0965 3012B	Tapping Screw With Washer - M3x12	
128	1102 4681	Connector - 5557-02R-210	
129	1105 0243	Wire Saddle	
130	1105 0260	Wire Saddle	
131	1105 0283	Clamp	
132	1105 0344	Clamp	

INDEX	PARTS NO.	DESCRIPTION	Note
133	1204 2334	Safety Switch - FA1I-AA2	
134	1407 3952	IC - ANALOG SW- 4053	
135	0802 5210	Tapping Screw - M3x8	
136	1102 4473	CT Connector - 2P	
137	0313 0040B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	
138	0964 3006B	Tapping Screw - M3x6	

PARTS INDEX

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H006 2383	Snap Ring	19- 14
H020 1234	Cord Clamp	19- 29
H053 1600	Bushing - M6 : CMFE	5- 9
H053 1600	Bushing - M6 : CMFE	9- 5
H081 1147	Pressure Roller Assy	7- 1
H081 2438	Shaft - Agitator	13- 81
H081 4052	Decal - Laser	11- 1
H081 5043	Interlock Switch - LD	17- 15
H081 5700	Modular Cord - 6p/6p	3- 14
H515 1062	Bushing - R1/R2 Rollers	9- 1
H515 1204	ADF Feeder Unit	5- 1
H515 1205	Separation Plate Ass'y	7- 20
H515 1250	ADF Guide Plate - Upper	7- 16
H515 1251	Guide Plate - ADF - Lower	5- 8
H515 1263	Bracket - Grounding	7- 10
H515 1266	Pulley - R2 Roller	9- 6
H515 1267	Grounding Plate	7- 15
H515 1271	Shaft - Separetion Pressure	7- 14
H515 1277	Clip - Base - Shading Plate	7- 17
H515 1278	Shading Plate	7- 19
H515 1279	Base - Shading Plate	7- 18
H515 1282	Rack Gear - Document Guide	5- 19
H515 1283	Pinion Gear - Document Guide	5- 20
H515 1284	Shaft - Document Feed	5- 10
H515 1285	Gear - Document Feed	5- 4
H515 1290	Plumber Block - ADF Roller - Right	5- 5
H515 1291	Plumber Block - ADF Roller - Left	5- 3
H515 1292	Cover - ADF	5- 2
H515 1293	Pressure Plate - Pickup	7- 21
H515 1294	Shaft - Lock	5- 27
H515 1295	Sping - Lock	5- 13

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 1296	Lever - Lock Release	5- 15
H515 1297	Lock Lever - Operation Panel	5- 16
H515 1298	Spring Plate - CTM	5- 17
H515 1301	Shaft - Pressure Roller	7- 5
H515 1303	Spring - Shading Plate	7- 26
H515 1304	Hook - Cover Lock - Right	5- 14
H515 1305	Hook - Cover Lock - Left	5- 21
H515 1306	Guide - Original - Right	5- 7
H515 1307	Guide - Original - Left	5- 6
H515 1312	Pressure Roller - R1	7- 7
H515 1313	Sponge Collar - R1	7- 6
H515 1318	Bracket - Top Cover	5- 23
H515 1321	Sponge - Fusing 1	5- 26
H515 1323	Spring Plate - R1/R2 - Left	7- 12
H515 1324	Spring Plate - R1/R2 - Right	7- 13
H515 1331	Mylar - ADF	7- 22
H515 1335	Ground Plate - ADF - Lower 2	5- 22
H515 1336	Spring	7- 25
H515 1337	Grownding Wire Holder	5- 25
H515 2119	Cover - Gear	15- 11
H515 2121	Spring Plate - Fusing Exit	15- 61
H515 2122	Fusing Exit Roller	15- 62
H515 2124	Idler Gear - Z22-18	15- 18
H515 2125	Idler Gear - Z17	15- 17
H515 2126	Gear - Hot Roller	15- 27
H515 2127	Idler Gear - Z18	15- 9
H515 2128	Gear - Fusing Exit Roller	15- 12
H515 2133	Lever - Lock - Left	15- 43
H515 2134	Lock Lever - Right	15- 36
H515 2135	Shaft - Lock Lever	15- 39
H515 2136	Spring - Lock Lever	15- 44

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 2137	Bearing - Hot Roller	15- 23
H515 2139	Bushing - Fusing Exit Roller	15- 13
H515 2141	Spacer - Hot Roller	15- 25
H515 2143	Holder - Thermistor	15- 1
H515 2145	Terminal Plate - Thermostat - 1	15- 22
H515 2149	Actuator - Fusing Exit Sensor	15- 3
H515 2153	Spring - Hot Roller Stripper	15- 5
H515 2154	Spring - Pressure Roller	15- 48
H515 2155	Fusing Right Cover	15- 30
H515 2156	Ground Plate - Hot Roller	15- 57
H515 2157	Fusing Inner Cover - Right	15- 42
H515 2158	Fusing Inner Cover - Left	15- 59
H515 2160	Stopper - Hot Roller	15- 24
H515 2161	Spring - Sensor Actuator	15- 4
H515 2163	Spring Plate - Right	15- 50
H515 2164	Spring Plate - Left	15- 55
H515 2165	Fusing Left Cover	15- 60
H515 2166	Roller - Exit Roller	15- 14
H515 2167	Holder - Fusing Lamp	15- 10
H515 2168	Lock Spring - Cleaning Pad	15- 69
H515 2169	Bearing - Pressure Roller	15- 49
H515 2171	Spring Plate - Pressure Roller	15- 56
H515 2176	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Right	15- 46
H515 2177	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Left	15- 54
H515 2178	Bracket - Lamp Connector	15- 40
H515 2179	Cover - Connector	15- 33
H515 2180	Bracket - Idler Gear	15- 41
H515 2181	Separation Hook - Fusing	15- 6
H515 2182	Stepped Screw	15- 53
H515 2184	Decal - Warning	15- 66
H515 2189	Grounding Plate Holder	15- 19

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 2199	Front Fixing Plate	17- 57
H515 2410	Bearing - Mag. Roller - Left	13- 76
H515 2411	Bearing - Mag. Roller - Right	13- 61
H515 2413	Gear - Agitator	13- 59
H515 2414	Bearing - Dvlp. Roller - Left	13- 1
H515 2415	Bearing - Dvlp. Roller - Right	13- 4
H515 2416	Main Motor Ass'y - DC24V;16.1W	13- 67
H515 2417	Terminal - Quenching Lamp	13- 42
H515 2442	Gear - MAG. Roller	13- 60
H515 2443	Idler Gear 1 - Small	13- 56
H515 2444	Idler Gear 1 - Large	13- 57
H515 2445	Idler Gear 2 - Large	13- 58
H515 2446	Drive Gear - Opc Drum	13- 75
H515 2447	Idler Gear 3	13- 69
H515 2448	Idler Gear 4	13- 70
H515 2449	Idler Gear 5	13- 65
H515 2450	Idler Gear 6	13- 51
H515 2451	Gear	13- 2
H515 2452	Gear - Transfer Roller	13- 36
H515 2455	Holder - Transfer Roller - Left	13- 39
H515 2456	Holder - Transfer Roller - Right	13- 41
H515 2457	Bushing - Idler 2 - Large	13- 63
H515 2458	Bushing - Idler 2 - Small	13- 73
H515 2461	Transfer Roller	13- 37
H515 2462	Shaft - Idler 1	13- 55
H515 2463	Shaft - Idler 2	13- 62
H515 2466	Shaft - Idler 5	13- 64
H515 2467	Shaft - Idler 6	13- 52
H515 2468	Terminal Plate - Ground	13- 47
H515 2469	Terminal Plate - Transfer - S	13- 44
H515 2471	Terminal Plate - Transfer - L	13- 27

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 2472	Terminal Plate - Separation	13- 46
H515 2473	Terminal Plate - Development - S	13- 25
H515 2474	Terminal Plate - Development - L	13- 19
H515 2478	Terminal Plate - Charge - M	13- 23
H515 2481	Terminal Plate - A	13- 21
H515 2482	Terminal Plate - OPC Drum	13- 48
H515 2485	Spring - Transfer Roller	13- 40
H515 2487	Stopper - Pin	13- 31
H515 2488	Stopper - Receptacle	13- 32
H515 2491	Inner Cover - Development	13- 72
H515 2492	Bracket - Fusing Drive Gear	13- 53
H515 2493	Drive Gear - Fusing	13- 50
H515 2494	Shaft - Drive Gear - Fusing	13- 54
H515 2495	Spring - Bracket - Fusing Drive	13- 68
H515 2496	Terminal Plate - Grid	13- 74
H515 2502	Seal - Roller	13- 17
H515 2506	Seal - Duct - S	13- 9
H515 2506	Seal - Duct - S	13- 11
H515 2530	Terminal Plate - B	13- 20
H515 2534	Seal - Development - A	13- 26
H515 2535	Seal - B	13- 18
H515 2536	Seal - Development - C	13- 13
H515 2537	Seal - Development - D	13- 88
H515 2541	Deal - Shutter Guide	13- 66
H515 2542	Stopper - Bearing - M6	13- 77
H515 2543	Holder - Terminal Plate - OPC Drum	13- 49
H515 2547	Holder - Harness	13- 78
H515 2551	Seal - Duct - R	17- 39
H515 2552	Roller Seal - R	13- 80
H515 2554	Stopper Pin	13- 89
H515 2711	Mirror - Synchronization	11- 7

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 2712	Laser Exposure Glass	11- 8
H515 2714	Cover - Laser Unit	11- 2
H515 2715	Laser Diode Unit	11- 16
H515 2717	Laser Sync.Detector	11- 10
H515 2719	Spring Plate - BTL - Left	11- 4
H515 2720	Spring Plate - BTL - Right	11- 3
H515 2721	Spring Plate - Mirror - Laser Sync.	11- 6
H515 2722	Spring Plate - Lens - Laser	11- 15
H515 2723	Spring Plate - Exposure Glass	11- 9
H515 2724	Clip - Laser Unit	3- 8
H515 2725	Cylindrical Lens - Laser	11- 5
H515 2725	Cylindrical Lens - Laser	11- 14
H515 2734	Bracket - Base	3- 40
H515 2831	Spring Plate - CTM	5- 24
H515 3110	Base - Plotter	17- 41
H515 3111	Bracket - Interlock SW.	17- 10
H515 3112	Actuator - Interlock SW.	17- 13
H515 3114	Slider - Interlock SW.	17- 9
H515 3116	Fulcrum - Fusing Unit	3- 24
H515 3130	Cover - Power Pack	3- 22
H515 3374	Holder - FDU	19- 1
H515 3517	Bottom Plate - Cassette	23- 4
H515 3518	Cover - Cassette	23- 21
H515 3519	Paper Size Indicator	23- 29
H515 3520	Side Fence	23- 39
H515 3521	Knob - Side Fence	23- 37
H515 3522	End Fence	23- 24
H515 3523	Corner Separator - Left	23- 36
H515 3524	Corner Separator - Right	23- 6
H515 3526	Bracket - Gear Arm	23- 14
H515 3527	Gear - Z32	23- 16

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 3528	Gear - Z26	23- 15
H515 3529	Friction Pad - Large	23- 2
H515 3530	Friction Pad - Small	23- 3
H515 3531	Bushing - Paper Feed Roller	23- 10
H515 3533	Spring - Gear Arm	23- 13
H515 3534	Spring - Side Fence	23- 38
H515 3535	Spring - Paper Size Indicator	23- 30
H515 3538	Shaft - Paper Size Indicator	23- 31
H515 3539	Spring Plate - Lock	23- 26
H515 3540	Paper Tray Extension	23- 22
H515 3541	Gear Cover	23- 41
H515 3542	Rivet	23- 35
H515 3543	Retaining Ring - M4	15- 74
H515 3543	Retaining Ring - M4	23- 12
H515 3544	E-ring - JR-E6	19- 32
H515 3544	E-ring - JR-E6	23- 17
H515 3545	Cover - Paper End Sensor	23- 9
H515 3546	Lower Cover	23- 23
H515 3550	Cover - Bypass Feed	23- 19
H515 3552	Bypass Feed Table Ass'y	23- 20
H515 3553	Stopper - Corner Separator	23- 42
H515 3554	Decal - Paper Limit	23- 25
H515 3555	Decal - Paper Set	23- 18
H515 3556	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	23- 7
H515 3557	Paper Feed Roller	23- 1
H515 5002	Original Sensor - S1	7- 9
H515 5003	Original Sensor - S2	7- 8
H515 5004	Original Sensor - S3	7- 27
H515 5005	Original Sensor - S4	9- 16
H515 5015	Thermistor - Fusing	15- 2
H515 5017	Thermostat - Fusing	15- 20

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H515 5018	Cover Switch - Fusing Exit	15- 34
H515 5022	Harness - Fusing Lamp	15- 29
H515 5024	Ground Wire - Fusing	15- 58
H515 5041	Ozone Fan Motor - DC24V;1.44W	17- 48
H515 5050	Toner End Sensor	17- 5
H515 5054	Paper Size Sensor	19- 21
H515 5054	Paper Size Sensor	23- 28
H515 5075	Paper Feed Clutch	23- 11
H515 5076	Paper End Sensor	23- 8
H515 5080	Relay Harness Assembly	23- 34
H515 5085	Harness - 100 Sheet Cassette	19- 30
H515 5324	Grounding Wire	5- 28
H515 5325	Grounding Wire	7- 11
H515 5396	Seal Sheet	13- 87
H516 1050	Scanner Base	9- 21
H516 1054	Bracket	9- 20
H516 1055	Bracket - R1 Roller	9- 18
H516 1057	Drive Cover	9- 26
H516 1058	Cover - Scanner - Left	3- 13
H516 1059	Ground Plate - Scanner	9- 10
H516 1062	Spacer - Image Sensor	9- 19
H516 1063	Image Sensor Sheet	9- 25
H516 1064	Spring Plate - Image Sensor	9- 17
H516 1065	Spacer - TX Idler Gear	9- 4
H516 1066	Contact Image Sensor - A4	9- 15
H516 1068	Bracket - Operation Panel	9- 24
H516 1250	R1 Roller	9- 3
H516 1251	R2 Roller	9- 2
H516 1253	Timing Belt - TX	9- 7
H516 1254	Pulley - R2 Roller	9- 8
H516 1255	Idler Gear - TX	9- 12

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 1257	Idler Gear - Feed	5- 12
H516 1258	Bracket - TX Motor	9- 9
H516 1261	Spring Plate - Belt Tensioning	9- 13
H516 1262	Roller - Belt Tensioning	9- 14
H516 1263	Seal - Fusing 2	5- 18
H516 2110	Roller - Fusing - A4	15- 26
H516 2111	Pressure Roller - A4	15- 51
H516 2112	Upper Case - Fusing - A4	15- 8
H516 2116	Lower Case - Fusing - A4	15- 52
H516 2117	Fusing Exit Roller - A4	15- 16
H516 2118	Cover - Front - F16 - A4	15- 65
H516 2119	Bracket - Table - Original	15- 37
H516 2120	Cover - Exit - A4	15- 64
H516 2121	Inner Cover - A4	15- 45
H516 2126	Bracket - Fusing - A4	15- 63
H516 2127	Spacer - Fusing Exit Roller - Left	15- 15
H516 2130	Guide Plate - Fusing Exit - A4	15- 73
H516 2133	Terminal Plate - Thermofuse - 1	15- 77
H516 2134	Terminal Plate - Thermofuse - 2	15- 76
H516 2135	Grounding Plate - A4	15- 71
H516 2136	Cushion	15- 75
H516 2146	Terminal Plate - Thermostat - 2	15- 21
H516 2150	Cleaning Pad - Fusing	15- 68
H516 2152	Antistatic Brush - Fusing - A4	15- 38
H516 2159	Cover - Thermistor	15- 7
H516 2173	Guide - Fusing - A4	15- 47
H516 2198	Stopper - Fusing	15- 35
H516 2401	Development Unit - A4	13- 6
H516 2405	Rubber Roller Ass'y - DVLP -B4	13- 5
H516 2412	Toner Metering Blade - A4	13- 33
H516 2419	Transfer Roller - A4	13- 38

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 2431	Guide - Transfer Roller - A4	13- 43
H516 2432	Cover - Toner Hopper - A4	13- 12
H516 2460	Antistatic Brush - Separation - A4	13- 45
H516 2475	Terminal - Rubber Roller - A4	13- 24
H516 2500	Toner Duct - A4	13- 7
H516 2501	Toner Duct Shield - A4 - 1	13- 82
H516 2505	Toner Duct Shield - A4 - 2	13- 10
H516 2516	Magnet Roller - Development - A4	13- 16
H516 2518	Antistatic Brush - Mag. Roller - A4	13- 35
H516 2519	Rubber Roller - Development - A4	13- 3
H516 2524	Film - Toner Duct - A4	13- 8
H516 2528	Sheield - Rubber Roller - A4	13- 34
H516 2544	Toner Agitator - Development	13- 15
H516 2548	Film - Toner Hopper - A4	13- 29
H516 2549	Seal - Toner Duct - Lower - A4	13- 14
H516 2555	Lower Seal	13- 30
H516 2561	Diffusion Plate - L	13- 83
H516 2562	Diffusion Plate - S1	13- 85
H516 2563	Diffusion Plate - S2	13- 86
H516 2564	Diffusion Plate Holder	13- 84
H516 3116	Spacer - Development Unit - A4	17- 33
H516 3128	Bracket - Cord Clamper	17- 6
H516 3129	Ground Plate - Left	17- 56
H516 3131	Bracket - Rear	17- 1
H516 3132	Bracket - PSU	17- 3
H516 3133	Bracket - Rear - Left	17- 2
H516 3134	Cover - PSU	3- 27
H516 3135	Bracket - Top Cover Locking - Left	17- 45
H516 3137	Bracket - Top Cover Locking - Right	17- 14
H516 3139	Bracket - Cooling Fan	17- 18
H516 3140	Bracket - Ozone Fan	17- 49

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 3141	Bracket - Ozone Filter	17- 46
H516 3142	Ozone Filter - 8	17- 47
H516 3144	Bracket - PIF - 1	17- 53
H516 3145	Bracket - PIF - 2	17- 54
H516 3146	Bracket - Toner End Sensor	17- 4
H516 3147	Harness Clamper - Base	17- 68
H516 3147	Harness Clamper - Base	19- 34
H516 3148	Sponge - 1	17- 63
H516 3149	Sponge - 2	17- 60
H516 3150	Sponge - 3	17- 61
H516 3151	Sponge - 4	17- 62
H516 3152	Sponge - 5	17- 22
H516 3152	Sponge - 5	17- 32
H516 3153	Sponge - Cushion - Cooling Fan	17- 52
H516 3154	Sponge - Cushion - Ozone Fan	17- 55
H516 3155	Insulating Sheet - PSU	17- 50
H516 3156	Insulating Sheet - NCU	17- 51
H516 3157	Bushing - 66	17- 67
H516 3301	Gear Box - Paper Feed	19- 16
H516 3316	Bottom Base	19- 26
H516 3319	Guide - 100 Sheet Cassette - Left	19- 27
H516 3320	Guide - 100 Sheet Cassette - Right	19- 19
H516 3322	Side Plate - Right	19- 7
H516 3326	Side Plate - Left	19- 31
H516 3328	Spacer - Cassette Entrance - Right	19- 23
H516 3329	Spacer - Cassette Entrance - Left	19- 24
H516 3330	Rail - Cassette - Front	19- 22
H516 3331	Rail - Cassette - Rear	19- 10
H516 3332	Lock - Cassette - Left	19- 9
H516 3333	Lock - Cassette - Right	19- 8
H516 3335	Shaft - Feed Roller - Left	19- 3

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 3341	Bracket - Paper End Sensor	19- 12
H516 3342	Base - Main Board	19- 2
H516 3344	Ground Plate - Registration Roller	19- 28
H516 3345	Bracket - Pressure Roller	17- 31
H516 3346	Bracket - Paper Size Sensor	19- 18
H516 3358	Spring - Pressure Roller	17- 28
H516 3359	Cover - Harness - Paper Size Sensor	19- 17
H516 3361	Rubber Foot	19- 25
H516 3370	Paper Feed Roller	19- 5
H516 3372	Shaft - Feed Roller - Right	19- 6
H516 3373	Stay - Feed Roller	19- 4
H516 3376	Ground Plate - Bracket - Regist.	17- 26
H516 3379	Ground Plate - Paper Feed Motor	19- 13
H516 3380	Mylar - Bracket - Registration	17- 24
H516 3381	Ground Plate - Cassette - Left	21- 25
H516 3384	Spring Plate - Lock	17- 65
H516 3401	Cassette Base - Universal	21- 5
H516 3407	Cassette Base - A4/LT	21- 5
H516 3410	Bottom Plate - Cassette	21- 7
H516 3411	Separation Hook - Cassette - Left	21- 32
H516 3412	Side Fence - Cassette	21- 34
H516 3413	Separation Hook - Cassette - Right	21- 24
H516 3414	End Fence - Cassette	21- 2
H516 3415	Paper Guide Plate - Bypass	21- 26
H516 3416	Registration Roller	21- 15
H516 3417	Bushing - Registration Roller	21- 39
H516 3419	Gear - Registration Roller	21- 14
H516 3421	Friction Pad - Bottom Plate - Large	21- 8
H516 3423	Paper Guide Plate - Regist Left	21- 11
H516 3424	Paper Guide Plate - Regist Right	21- 12
H516 3425	Lock - Bottom Plate	21- 29

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 3425	Lock - Bottom Plate	23- 33
H516 3426	Spring - Lock - Bottom Plate	21- 30
H516 3426	Spring - Lock - Bottom Plate	23- 32
H516 3428	Paper Size Indicator - Letter	21- 28
H516 3430	Paper Size Indicator - LG	21- 28
H516 3434	Shaft - Pressure Roller	17- 30
H516 3434	Shaft - Pressure Roller	21- 21
H516 3435	Actuator - Bypass Feed Sensor	21- 19
H516 3437	Manual Feed Table	21- 27
H516 3438	Spring Plate - End Fence	21- 1
H516 3439	Stopper - Fence	21- 3
H516 3443	Mylar - Paper Guide - 1	21- 37
H516 3444	Mylar - Paper Guide - 2	21- 31
H516 3445	Mylar - Paper Guide - 3	21- 38
H516 3446	Mylar - Paper Guide - 4	21- 36
H516 3447	Spring - Registration Roller	21- 13
H516 3448	Spring - Pressure Roller	21- 18
H516 3449	Spring - Bypass Sensor Actuator	21- 20
H516 3450	Spring Bottom Plate	21- 9
H516 3462	Bracket - Pressure Roller - Cass.	21- 17
H516 3463	Guide - Pressure Roller - Cass.	21- 23
H516 3465	Support Plate - End Fence	21- 42
H516 3469	Cover - Manual Feed Table	21- 41
H516 3470	Decal - Paper Set - Cassette	21- 6
H516 3471	Sponge - End Fence	21- 4
H516 3482	Spring Plate - Bracket -right	21- 16
H516 3510	Paper Tray - 100 Sheet Cassette	23- 27
H516 3532	Spring - Bottom Plate	23- 5
H516 3581	Decal - By-pass Feed (100 Cassette)	23- 40
H516 3583	Decal - Bypass Feed	21- 33
H516 4020	Cover - Left	3- 19

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 4023	Cover - IC Memory Card	3- 18
H516 4026	Cover - Counter	3- 6
H516 4028	Document Table	3- 28
H516 4032	Copy Tray - A4	3- 29
H516 4033	Copy Tray Extension	3- 30
H516 4034	Document Tray	3- 5
H516 4040	Cover - PIF	3- 2
H516 4043	Cover - Connector	3- 17
H516 4045	Cover - Rear - 2	3- 3
H516 4046	Cover - PIF - 2	3- 1
H516 4047	Cover - NCU - E	3- 4
H516 4048	Cover - 232C	3- 16
H516 4049	Guide - IC Card	3- 21
H516 4068	Cover - Rear - 1	3- 7
H516 4070	Cover - Right	3- 15
H516 4225	Cover - Operation Panel - Fx6	7- 2
H516 4303	Shield - Na - Key Switch	7- 24
H516 4322	Cover - Quick Dial Keys	7- 23
H516 5000	Stepper Motor - TX 24VDC 18.7W	9- 11
H516 5012	Ground Wire - Image Sensor	9- 22
H516 5012	Ground Wire - Image Sensor	15- 72
H516 5016	Heater - A4 - 115V	15- 28
H516 5018	Termofuse	15- 78
H516 5031	Monitor Speaker	3- 20
H516 5041	Cooling Fan Motor - DC24V;3.6W	17- 17
H516 5045	Cable - Charge Bias - A4	13- 22
H516 5046	Cable - Transfer Bias - A4	13- 28
H516 5047	Power Supply - Pack - A4	3- 23
H516 5048	Zenor Diode - 732V:HVRD	13- 71
H516 5050	Paper End Sensor	19- 11
H516 5052	Stepper Motor-paper Feed 24VDC13W	19- 15

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H516 5301	Harness - Paper Size	3- 39
H516 5301	Harness - Paper Size	19- 20
H516 5302	Harness - LDDR	11- 11
H516 5304	Harness - Image Sensor	9- 23
H516 5306	Harness - OPU	7- 4
H516 5308	Driver Harness	3- 33
H516 5309	Harness - TX Motor	3- 35
H516 5311	Sensor Harness	17- 35
H516 5313	Harness - Main Motor ETC.	3- 36
H516 5315	Harness - Interlock SW 24V	17- 11
H516 5316	Harness - Paper Feed Motor	3- 34
H516 5318	Harness - Power Pack	3- 32
H516 5319	Harness - Interlock SW 5V	17- 16
H516 5322	Relay Harness - Fusing Unit	3- 38
H516 5325	Grounding Wire - 190mm	19- 33
H516 6002	PCB - FCE - FX6 - US	3- 10
H516 6003	PCB - FDU - FX6 - US	3- 11
H516 6020	PCB - OPU - FX6	7- 3
H516 8600	Operator's Manual - FX6 - US	3- *
H521 2040	Laser Protter Unit	3- 9
H521 3144	Harness Clamp	17- 8
H521 3145	Sponge - Lock - Front	17- 23
H521 3147	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 1	17- 19
H521 3148	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 2	17- 20
H521 3149	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 3	17- 21
H521 3150	Sponge - Cooling Fan - 4	17- 22
H521 3153	Sponge - Base - Left - Middle	17- 64
H521 3156	Sponge - Registration - 1	17- 43
H521 3157	Sponge - Registration - 2	17- 39
H521 3158	Sponge - Power Pack - 1	17- 42
H521 3159	Sponge - Power Pack - 2	17- 40

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
H521 3160	Sponge - Base - Bottom	17- 36
H521 3161	Seal - Base - Bottom - 1	17- 38
H521 3162	Seal - Base - Bottom - 2	17- 37
H521 3164	Pin - Right Fulcrum	3- 25
H521 3340	Pressure Roller - Registration	17- 29
H521 3340	Pressure Roller - Registration	21- 22
H521 3352	Bracket - Plotter Base Connection	17- 44
H521 3379	Sponge - Bracket - Pressure Roller	17- 25
H521 3419	Friction Pad - Bottom Plate - Small	21- 10
H521 5042	Ground Wire - Lock - Front	17- 66
H521 5054	Registration Sensor	17- 27
H521 5061	Polygonal Motor - DC24V;0.3A	11- 12
H521 5309	Harness - NCU	3- 31
H521 5310	Sensor Harness	17- 58
H521 5312	Harness - Fusing Sensors	15- 32
H521 5321	Harness - Mirror Motor	11- 13
H521 5322	Harness - PSU	3- 37
H521 5324	Relay Harness - Interlock - 5V	17- 12
H521 5326	Heater Relay Harness	15- 70
H521 5327	Power Cord - 115V	17- 7
H521 5401	PSU - L30 - US	3- 26

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
AW02 0021	Photointerruptor - 175487-3	15- 31
AW02 0021	Photointerruptor - 175487-3	17- 34
G011 3275	Snap Ring	3- 41
A048 6149	Decal - Manual Feed	21- 35
5447 2681	Snap Ring	5- 11
5488 6020	PCB - NCU - USA	3- 12

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
0313 0040B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x4	25-137
0313 0060B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	25-101
0313 0080B	Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x8	25-102
0353 0080Z	Philips Trass Head Screw - M3x8	25-103
0413 0082W	Tapping Screw - M3x8	25-104
0433 0102B	Tapping Screw - M3x10	25-105
0443 0060W	Hexagon Head Tapping Screw - M3x6	25-106
0632 0100G	Pin - 2x10mm	25-107
0633 0120G	Parallel Pin - 3x12	25-108
0707 3050B	Bushing - 3x5mm	25-109
0720 0020E	Retaining Ring - M2	25-110
0720 0025E	Retaining Ring - M2.5	25-111
0720 0030E	Retaining Ring - M3	25-112
0720 0040E	Retaining Ring - M4	25-113
0720 0050E	Retaining Ring - M5	25-114
0720 0060E	Retaining Ring - M6	25-115
0802 5205	Tapping Screw - M3x6	25-116
0802 5206	Tapping Screw - M3x8	25-117
0802 5210	Tapping Screw - M3x8	25-135
0802 5230	Tapping Screw - M3x10	25-118
0805 3386	Bushing - 8mm	25-119
0951 3006B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer-M3x6	25-120
0951 3008B	Philips Screw With Flat Washer-M3x8	25-121
0954 3006B	Screw - M3X6	25-122
0957 3006B	Screw - M3X6	25-123
0964 3006B	Tapping Screw - M3x6	25-138
0965 3006B	Tapping Screw With Flat Washer M3x6	25-124
0965 3008B	Tapping Screw With Washer - M3x8	25-125
0965 3010B	Tapping Screw With Flat WasherM3x6	25-126
0965 3012B	Tapping Screw With Washer - M3x12	25-127
1102 4473	CT Connector - 2P	25-136

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX
1102 4681	Connector - 5557-02R-210	25-128
1105 0243	Wire Saddle	25-129
1105 0260	Wire Saddle	25-130
1105 0283	Clamp	25-131
1105 0344	Clamp	25-132
1204 2334	Safety Switch - FA1I-AA20	25-133
1407 3952	IC - ANALOG SW- 4053	25-134

PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	INDEX